

UNIT 1 COMING HOME

تـنـويــــه: تم التدريب على المحادثات وقطع القراءة في مذكرة الشرح



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I go to the baker's with my mother ………………; we always buy bread in the morning.
   ⓐ every ⓑ dairy ⓒ diary ⓓ daily
2. My father likes to read stories …………………… the sofa in the evenings.
   ⓐ at ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ in
3. I usually…………………… my friends to have fun after I do my homework.
   ⓐ text ⓑ test ⓒ make ⓓ read
4. All children like to…………………… sports in their free time.
   ⓐ make ⓑ play ⓒ spend ⓓ go
5. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a …………………… .
   ⓐ joy ⓑ difference ⓒ fun ⓓ routine
6. My brother has an important……………… today. He hopes to get the new job.
   ⓐ view ⓑ review ⓒ group ⓓ interview
7. My…………………… friend is called Waleed. I like him so much.
   ⓐ best ⓑ worst ⓒ ugly ⓓ bad
8. I live in a…………………… of flats with my parents and two sisters.
   ⓐ packet ⓑ block ⓒ piece ⓓ wall
9. I like to…………………… to my grandma when she tells us stories before we sleep.
   ⓐ go ⓑ walk ⓒ listen ⓓ get
10. We go to the…………………… when we want to buy bread.
    ⓐ butcher's ⓑ chemist's ⓒ baker's ⓓ grocer's
11. Young people should learn how to…………………… their free time usefully.
    ⓐ lose ⓑ have ⓒ do ⓓ spend
12. He went to the station to…………………… the bus to work.
    ⓐ take ⓑ hide ⓒ climb ⓓ talk
13. Come and sit on this ……………………; four people can sit on it.
    ⓐ sofa ⓑ chair ⓒ bed ⓓ wheelchair

14. I saw Ahmed's father on his........................ to work this morning.
ⓐ road ⓑ street ⓒ away ⓓ way
15. What activities do you........................ at the weekend, Habiba?
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ get ⓓ go
16. A .... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
ⓐ clinic ⓑ workshop ⓒ prison ⓓ hospital
17. Roberta feels.................. when some men take their father from their home.
ⓐ terrible ⓑ glad ⓒ pleased ⓓ boring
18. The family don't have much money and now they are ....
ⓐ poor ⓑ rich ⓒ ugly ⓓ boring
19. There are four........................ on the sofa.
ⓐ chairs ⓑ cushions ⓒ tables ⓓ windows
20. We have a beautiful........................ on the floor in front of the living room.
ⓐ fridge ⓑ curtain ⓒ carpet ⓓ TV
21. I have a........................ of drawers where I can put many things.
ⓐ chest ⓑ test ⓒ box ⓓ piece
22. My little sister always looks at the........................ to see herself in it.
ⓐ drawer ⓑ carpet ⓒ wardrobe ⓓ mirror
23. My mother has a big........................ to put her dresses in.
ⓐ carpet ⓑ curtain ⓒ drawer ⓓ wardrobe
24. There's a big........................ in the bathroom where we wash up.
ⓐ bath ⓑ basin ⓒ shower ⓓ tap
25. I have a........................ in my bedroom to put all my books on.
ⓐ wardrobe ⓑ mirror ⓒ bookshelf ⓓ carpet
26. I always put a bottle of water in........................ of me when I study.
ⓐ front ⓑ near ⓒ between ⓓ next
27. Students should........................ English every day to be perfect at it.
ⓐ tell ⓑ practise ⓒ send ⓓ forget
28. This isn't your book. It........................to your sister. Don t play with it.
ⓐ gives ⓑ belongs ⓒ clowns ⓓ spends
29. My school is a short........................ from my house. It's very near.
ⓐ fly ⓑ ride ⓒ drive ⓓ walk
30. El Faiyoum has many........................ reserves which you can visit.
ⓐ traditional ⓑ tradition ⓒ nature ⓓ natural
31. Many young men look........................ jobs to earn enough money.
ⓐ at ⓑ after ⓒ up ⓓ for
32. I get up early to........................ dressed and go to school on time.
ⓐ get ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ make
33. I get up early to get .... and go to school on time.
ⓐ dressed ⓑ dress ⓒ dresses ⓓ dressing

34. He has a small shop in the city centre. He........................ food and drinks.
ⓐ sells ⓑ buys ⓒ borrows ⓓ spends

35. We have a big house where we live upstairs, but my grandparents live........................ .
ⓐ downstairs ⓑ under stairs ⓒ on the roof ⓓ underground

36. You can see yourself in the ....
ⓐ lamp ⓑ mirror ⓒ carpet ⓓ curtain

37. On a..................... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her jobs.
ⓐ careful ⓑ typical ⓒ helpful ⓓ famous

38. Roberta's family home in the city is big and........................ It is really nice.
ⓐ ugly ⓑ attractive ⓒ boring ⓓ terrible

39. Someone who is .... is good looking.
ⓐ ugly ⓑ attractive ⓒ boring ⓓ terrible

40. A .... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.
ⓐ wardrobe ⓑ mirror ⓒ carpet ⓓ drawer

41. My parents sometimes get........................ late.
ⓐ at home ⓑ for home ⓒ to home ⓓ home

42. My dad starts work very early, so he........................ home before we get up
ⓐ goes ⓑ walks ⓒ leaves ⓓ watches

43. My father likes travelling........................ the train every day.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ by ⓓ with

44. I hope to buy a big home........................ a large garden.
ⓐ on ⓑ for ⓒ by ⓓ with

45. The children were very happy when they........................ their father again.
ⓐ ate ⓑ spent ⓒ bought ⓓ saw

46. The police took him........................ from home.
ⓐ way ⓑ a way ⓒ away ⓓ ways

47. Living in the desert has a lot of........................ .
ⓐhouses ⓑ adventures ⓒ rooms ⓓ shops

48. The farmer doesn't need to........................ his goats, as they can find their food in the mountains.
ⓐ eat ⓑ feed ⓒ play ⓓ drink

49. My uncle has a...................... in the garden and he uses it to water his plants.
ⓐ tap ⓑ tip ⓒ tape ⓓ tube

50. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can............ our food.
ⓐ share ⓑ feed ⓒ shade ⓓ wash

51. In Germany, There is a 'breakfast .... ' after the first lesson.
ⓐ brake ⓑ park ⓒ bark ⓓ break

52. Can you........................ my mother for me , because my phone isn't working.
ⓐ text ⓑ next ⓒ send ⓓ speak

53. My dad never works .... the weekend.
ⓐ at ⓑ with ⓒ in ⓓ of

54. El Faiyoum is a large city with beautiful nature reserves ....
ⓐ nearby ⓑ near ⓒ next to ⓓ nearly

55. I would like to visit the nature reserves .... El Faiyoum.
ⓐ nearby ⓑ near ⓒ next ⓓ nearly

56. There is a bank .... our school.
ⓐ near ⓑ nearer ⓒ nearby ⓓ nearest

57. There is a .... bank.
ⓐ a near ⓑ nearer ⓒ nearby ⓓ nearest

58. There is a bank ....
ⓐ a near ⓑ nearer ⓒ nearby ⓓ nearest

59. Is your school nearby, or is it .... our home?
ⓐ near to ⓑ next to ⓒ nearby ⓓ far from

60. The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway ....
ⓐ mine ⓑ fine ⓒ line ⓓ shine

61. I have two jobs to .... when I get home from school.
ⓐ take ⓑ make ⓒ work ⓓ do

62. We do many .... in the club.
ⓐ cooking ⓑ activities ⓒ homework ⓓ housework

63. There is an........................ tap at the end of street.
ⓐ outside ⓑ inside ⓒ side ⓓ in

64. The opposite of "poor" is ....
ⓐ rich ⓑ nice ⓒ good ⓓ tall

65. Roberta feels.................. when some men take their father from their home.
ⓐ terrible ⓑ glad ⓒ pleased ⓓ boring

66. You should be careful........................ your money.
ⓐ on ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ with

67. The weather .... colder.
ⓐ became ⓑ spent ⓒ had ⓓ went

68. This........................ cuts well , doesn't it ?
ⓐ spoon ⓑ knife ⓒ fork ⓓ brush

69. You should work........................ to succeed.
ⓐ quick ⓑ happy ⓒ hard ⓓ lazy

70. Could you try and .... the man you saw?
ⓐ eat ⓑ describe ⓒ run ⓓ bring

71. How often do you........................ dinner?
ⓐ repair ⓑ make ⓒ work ⓓ do

72. Roberta's family home has a .... garden full of flowers and trees.
ⓐ careful ⓑ helpful ⓒ large ⓓ cheap

73. People without enough money are........................ .
ⓐ healthy ⓑ careless ⓒ strong ⓓ poor

74. A/An .... of drawers is where you can put your clothes.
ⓐ armchair ⓑ wardrobe ⓒ cupboard ⓓ chest

75. In my bedroom, there is a grey .... I sit and read my book there.
ⓐ cupboard ⓑ wardrobe ⓒ armchair ⓓ mirror

76. When they open the curtains, there is a lot of .... in the room.
ⓐ shower ⓑ sunlight ⓒ darkness ⓓ study

77. Ali makes me .... happy.
ⓐ feel ⓑ feels ⓒ feeling ⓓ felt

78. Mr Ahmed Masaoud makes the lesson easy ....
ⓐ study ⓑ to study ⓒ studied ⓓ studying

79. Mr Ahmed Masaoud makes the lesson easy ....
ⓐ study ⓑ to studies ⓒ to be studied ⓓ studying

80. He goes to club .... Friday.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

81. He goes to club .... Friday afternoon.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

82. He goes to club .... Friday night.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

83. He goes to club .... night.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

84. He goes to club .... the night.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

85. He goes to club .... the night.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ into ⓓ of

86. He goes to club .... the evening.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

87. He goes to club .... midday.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

88. He goes to club .... noon.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

89. He goes to club .... noon.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

90. He goes to club .... the afternoon.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ of

91. He goes to work .... car.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

92. He goes to work .... his car.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

93. He goes to work .... a car.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

94. He goes to work .... bus.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

95. He goes to work .... the bus.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

96. He goes to work .... foot.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

97. He helped me .... a lot of housework yesterday.
ⓐ does ⓑ to do ⓒ doing ⓓ (ⓐ + ⓑ)

98. He helped me .... a lot of housework yesterday.
ⓐ do ⓑ to doing ⓒ doing ⓓ (ⓐ + ⓑ)

99. He helped me .... a lot of housework yesterday.
ⓐ do ⓑ to do ⓒ doing ⓓ (ⓐ + ⓑ)

100. We .... a lot of with our friends.
ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ have ⓓ having

101. We .... a lot of with our friends last week.
ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ have ⓓ having

102. He .... a lot of with his friends.
ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ have ⓓ having

103. We .... a lot of with our friends.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ play

104. Mohamed spends his time .... video games.
ⓐ play ⓑ to play ⓒ playing ⓓ plays

105. Mohamed wastes his time .... video games.
ⓐ play ⓑ to play ⓒ playing ⓓ plays

106. Mohamed spends his money .... candies.
ⓐ buy ⓑ to buy ⓒ on buying ⓓ buying

107. Mohamed wastes his money .... candies.
ⓐ buy ⓑ to buy ⓒ on buying ⓓ buying

108. Mohamed spent 5 pounds .... candies.
ⓐ buy ⓑ to buy ⓒ on buying ⓓ buying

109. Today's interview is with .... friend.
ⓐ best ⓑ the best ⓒ better ⓓ the better

110. Today's interview is with my .... friend.
ⓐ best ⓑ the best ⓒ better ⓓ the better

111. I do my homework and .... on the sofa
ⓐ read ⓑ to read ⓒ reading ⓓ am reading

112. I do my homework and I .... on the sofa
ⓐ read ⓑ to read ⓒ reading ⓓ am reading

113. I am doing my homework and .... on the sofa
ⓐ read ⓑ to read ⓒ reading ⓓ am reading

114. I am doing my homework and I .... on the sofa
ⓐ read ⓑ to read ⓒ reading ⓓ am reading

115. I do my homework, watch tv and .... on the sofa
ⓐ read ⓑ to read ⓒ reading ⓓ am reading

116. I study my lessons. .... I go to bed.
ⓐ That ⓑ Then ⓒ This ⓓ There

117. This is a photo .... my family.
ⓐ at ⓑ of ⓒ on ⓓ in

118. A: I like doing sports. B: I like doing sports, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

119. A: I don't like doing sports. B: I don't like doing sports, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

120. A: I like doing sports. B: I................. like doing sports.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

121. A: I don't like doing sports. B: I .... don't like doing sports.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

122. A: I like doing sports. B: ...., I like doing sports.
ⓐ Too ⓑ Either ⓒ Neither ⓓ Also

123. A: I like doing sports. B: Me, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

124. A: I don't like doing sports. B: Me, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ both ⓓ also

125. A: I don't like doing sports. B: Me, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ both ⓒ neither ⓓ also

126. A: I don't like doing sports. B: Me, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

127. Mr Masaoud wanted the email. Mr Ahmed , ... , thought it was necessary.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

128. Mr Masaoud wanted the email. Mr Ahmed .... thought it was necessary.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

129. Nada is too short. She is not a good athlete, ... I don't think she would be a good basketball player.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

130. Nada is too tall. She is a good athlete, ... I think she would be a good basketball player.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

131. He is lazy. He doesn't study .... That's why he doesn't do well in school.
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

132. A: I don't like doing sports. B: Me, ...
ⓐ too ⓑ either ⓒ neither ⓓ also

133. My father leaves home before we get up. .... he doesn't have breakfast with us.
ⓐ Because ⓑ That's when ⓒ That's why ⓓ As

134. Can I help you .... the washing up?
ⓐ with ⓑ at ⓒ to ⓓ for

135. You should study hard .... your exams.
ⓐ with ⓑ at ⓒ to ⓓ for

136. I'm away .... holiday until the 1st of June.
ⓐ with ⓑ at ⓒ on ⓓ in

137. I'm away ....the holiday until the 1st of June.
ⓐ with ⓑ at ⓒ on ⓓ in

138. He came to stay with us .... the school holidays.
ⓐ with ⓑ at ⓒ on ⓓ in

139. I recommend .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

140. I recommend him .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

141. I recommend he .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

142. I recommend that he .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

143. I recommend that he .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ should visit

144. I recommend he .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ should visit

145. I recommend Mr Masaoud .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

146. I suggest .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ should visit

147. I suggest that he .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ should visits

148. I suggest that he .... the Grand Egyptian Museum today.
ⓐ visits ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ should visit

149. Oh! I am sorry. I forgot .... my uncle.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

150. I will never forget .... my uncle for the first time.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

151. There are .... playing in the garden.
ⓐ little boys ⓑ many boy ⓒ much boys ⓓ few boy

152. There is .... playing in the garden.
ⓐ little boys ⓑ many boy ⓒ a little boy ⓓ a few boy

153. There is a .... boy playing in the garden.
ⓐ little ⓑ many ⓒ much ⓓ few

154. He is so smart although he is a .... boy.
ⓐ ten years old ⓑ ten-years-old ⓒ ten-year-old ⓓ ten year old

155. Ahmed is a .... boy.
ⓐ six years old ⓑ six-year-old ⓒ six year old ⓓ six-years-old

156. Ahmed is ....
ⓐ six years old ⓑ six-year-old ⓒ six year old ⓓ six-years-old

157. Last night, he .... wrong by writing that post.
ⓐ did ⓑ got ⓒ had ⓓ made

158. Last night, he .... the lesson wrong. He asked the teacher to explain it again.
ⓐ did ⓑ got ⓒ had ⓓ made

159. .... last, I gave him my mobile.
ⓐ On ⓑ For ⓒ In ⓓ At

160. Some men came and took him .... his house.
ⓐ away for ⓑ for away ⓒ away from ⓓ from away

161. .... the beginning of June an event happened.
ⓐ On ⓑ For ⓒ In ⓓ At

162. I found a bag which is full .... apples and oranges.
ⓐ of ⓑ by ⓒ on ⓓ in

163. I like sharing a room .... my sister.
ⓐ of ⓑ by ⓒ in ⓓ with

164. Have you got a game called .... one out.
ⓐ Ode ⓑ Odd ⓒ Old ⓓ Older

165. Our sons are very different .... each other.
ⓐ of ⓑ from ⓒ at ⓓ in

166. Our sons are very different .... each other.
ⓐ of ⓑ to ⓒ at ⓓ in

167. Our sons are very different .... each other.
ⓐ than ⓑ of ⓒ at ⓓ in

168. Their father in .... for something he didn’t do.
ⓐ kitchen ⓑ hospital ⓒ prison ⓓ castle

169. The family is so happy to be together again .... last.
ⓐ for ⓑ of ⓒ at ⓓ in

170. The family is so happy to be together again ....
ⓐ at least ⓑ at last ⓒ in last ⓓ in least

171. Thank you .... my penfriend.
ⓐ to being ⓑ to be ⓒ for being ⓓ for be

172. Thank you .... your email.
ⓐ to ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ in

173. Today thanks .... the Internet, you can do all your shopping from home.
ⓐ to ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ in

174. He is my .... We always exchange emails or text messages.
ⓐ keypal ⓑ keypad ⓒ penfriend ⓓ pen pal

175. He is my .... He writes friendly letters to me.
ⓐ keypal ⓑ keypad ⓒ penfriend ⓓ pen pad

176. He is my .... He writes friendly letters to me.
ⓐ keypal ⓑ keypad ⓒ pin friend ⓓ pen pal

177. He is my .... He is in another country so we have never met.
ⓐ keypal ⓑ keypad ⓒ penfriend ⓓ pen pad

178. I like to look .... the window.
ⓐ out ⓑ out of ⓒ off ⓓ out off

179. My room is small, but it is really ....
ⓐ dull ⓑ boring ⓒ attractive ⓓ ugly

180. The colour of the curtains .... the carpenter.
ⓐ reaches ⓑ matches ⓒ fetches ⓓ catches

181. I sleep with the curtains ....
ⓐ open ⓑ is opened ⓒ opening ⓓ opens

182. I sleep with the curtains ....
ⓐ opens ⓑ is opened ⓒ opening ⓓ opened

183. I can sit on the sofa and .... a book.
ⓐ reads ⓑ to read ⓒ read ⓓ reading

184. I can sit on the sofa and watch TV or .... a book.
ⓐ reads ⓑ to read ⓒ read ⓓ reading

185. My sister Lina has got long hair............................. glasses.
ⓐ ,so ⓑ because ⓒ and ⓓ ,but

186. Nader has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk very well.
ⓐ ,so ⓑ because ⓒ and ⓓ ,but

187. Nasser is not very good at Maths, ... he is very good at English.
ⓐ so ⓑ because ⓒ and ⓓ but

188. Osama likes playing football, basketball.................. tennis.
ⓐ so ⓑ because ⓒ and ⓓ but

189. I like swimming in the pool .... it is nice and cool.
ⓐ so ⓑ because ⓒ and ⓓ but

190. My father is very busy, ... he plays sports every day.
ⓐ so ⓑ because ⓒ and ⓓ but

Grammar - UNIT 1 -

القواعد اللغوية

The simple present tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

191. I .... get up late at the weekends. I never get up early.
ⓐ never ⓑ always ⓒ usually ⓓ sometimes

192. What time........................ your first lesson this morning?
ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ does ⓓ do

193. She .... the bus to get to school.
ⓐ taking ⓑ take ⓒ takes ⓓ talk

194. Dina goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. She......... goes swimming.
ⓐ never ⓑ sometimes ⓒ always ⓓ usually

195. Amir........................ walks to school on Sunday.
ⓐ often ⓑ ever ⓒ some time ⓓ usual

196. Amir walks to school on Sunday as ....
ⓐ often ⓑ ever ⓒ some time ⓓ usual

197. I have breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning. I............... have breakfast at that time.
ⓐ often ⓑ never ⓒ usually ⓓ always

198. My brother........................ a clever tennis player.
ⓐ always ⓑ is always ⓒ always is ⓓ never



199. Does Ali........................ coffee with his family?

ⓐ drink always ⓑ drinks always

ⓒ always drink ⓓ always drinks

200. Amr .... late.

ⓐ often is ⓑ is always ⓒ always is ⓓ is every

201. Birds always......................in the early morning.

ⓐ singing ⓑ to sing ⓒ sings ⓓ sing

202. He never........................ his homework in the evening.

ⓐ do ⓑ does ⓒ did ⓓ doing

203. What time does he usually........................ work?

ⓐ leave ⓑ leaves ⓒ leaving ⓓ left

204. She........................ a sports car .

ⓐ never drive ⓑ drives never ⓒ never drives ⓓ never

205. Sama and Hend always .... in the home.

ⓐ help ⓑ helping ⓒ helps ⓓ to help

206. A:How............... do you watch TV? B : Twice a week.

ⓐ many ⓑ long ⓒ much ⓓ often

207. Our teacher of English .... speaks Arabic in class.

ⓐ don't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ never ⓓ won't

208. Our teacher of English .... speak Arabic in class.

ⓐ don't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ never ⓓ won't

209. Our teachers of English .... speak Arabic in class.

ⓐ don't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ is never ⓓ won't

210. They .... write letters.

ⓐ doesn't ⓑ aren't ⓒ don't ⓓ isn't

211. She........................ ready for the exam.

ⓐ doesn't ⓑ don't ⓒ aren't ⓓ isn't

212. Aya always........................ tennis every Friday.

ⓐ play ⓑ playing ⓒ played ⓓ plays

213. Do you........................ on Fridays?

ⓐ often travel ⓑ travel often

ⓒ often travels ⓓ travels often

214. My father .... reads the newspaper in the morning. He reads it every morning.

ⓐ often ⓑ never ⓒ always ⓓ doesn't

215. My father .... read the newspaper in the morning. He reads it every morning.

ⓐ doesn't ⓑ never ⓒ always ⓓ sometimes

216. Amal........................ to her school on foot.

ⓐ goes usually ⓑ usually goes ⓒ go usually ⓓ usually go

217. .... children like playing computer games?
ⓐ Does ⓑ Do ⓒ Are ⓓ Were

218. .... children at their room and playing computer games?
ⓐ Does ⓑ Do ⓒ Are ⓓ Were

219. Does Ali........................ lunch with his family ?
ⓐ has always ⓑ have always ⓒ always have ⓓ always has

220. The sun........................ rises in the west.
ⓐ never ⓑ always ⓒ often ⓓ ever

221. Surgeons........................ usually see small things by the naked eye
ⓐ didn't ⓑ aren't ⓒ doesn't ⓓ don't

222. Students........................ in classes during the break.
ⓐ stay always ⓑ never stay ⓒ always stay ⓓ stay never

223. Mona........................ eat peppers. She doesn't like them at all.
ⓐ often ⓑ never ⓒ always ⓓ every

224. Faten never........................ to school late. It's her habit.
ⓐ arrives ⓑ arrive ⓒ arriving ⓓ arrived

225. Faten doesn't........................ to school late. It's her habit.
ⓐ arrives ⓑ arrive ⓒ arriving ⓓ arrived

226. Faten .... arrives to school late. It's her good habit.
ⓐ never ⓑ always ⓒ often ⓓ sometimes

227. Faten .... arrives to school early. It's her good habit.
ⓐ never ⓑ always ⓒ often ⓓ sometimes

228. Faten .... arrives to school late. It's her bad habit.
ⓐ never ⓑ always ⓒ often ⓓ sometimes

229. My cousins........................text me. They text me every day.
ⓐ never ⓑ always ⓒ usually ⓓ sometimes

230. Sorry, Heba .... not here at the moment.
ⓐ is ⓑ does ⓒ are ⓓ do

231. What time........................ your first lesson this morning?
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ has ⓓ can

232. On Saturday, I usually .... time with my cousins.
ⓐ spends ⓑ spend ⓒ am spending ⓓ spending

233. Hi! ....we play a game next weekend?
ⓐ Have ⓑ Do ⓒ Shall ⓓ Has

234. Where ....your uncle live?
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ has ⓓ do

235. Where ....your uncle?
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ has ⓓ do



236. ....speak English?
ⓐ You do ⓑ Are you ⓒ You are ⓓ Do you

237. ....English?
ⓐ You do ⓑ Are you ⓒ You are ⓓ Do you

The Simple Perfect Present Tense
زمن المضارع التام البسيط

238. The twin brothers in my class .... brown eyes.
ⓐ has got ⓑ have got ⓒ gets ⓓ hasn't got

239. Have you........................ a watermelon, mum?
ⓐ gets ⓑ getting ⓒ got ⓓ get

240. My best friend .... got short dark hair
ⓐ has ⓑ have ⓒ do ⓓ does

241. My best friend .... get short dark hair
ⓐ has ⓑ have ⓒ do ⓓ does

242. Has Mr Masaoud .... a moustache?
ⓐ get ⓑ getting ⓒ gets ⓓ got

243. .... Mr Masaoud got a moustache?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Has ⓓ Have

244. .... Mr Masaoud get a moustache?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Has ⓓ Have

245. .... Samir got short hair? -Yes, he has.
ⓐ Have ⓑ Has ⓒ Do ⓓ Does

246. I .... dark hair. I have got brown hair.
ⓐ have got ⓑ has got ⓒ haven't got ⓓ hasn't got

247. My brother is very young. He............................ not got a beard.
ⓐ has ⓑ hasn't ⓒ is ⓓ have

248. All my brothers and sisters .... dark curly hair.
ⓐ 's got ⓑ 've got ⓒ get ⓓ got

249. My uncle............................ got a son or a daughter.
ⓐ has ⓑ hasn't ⓒ have ⓓ haven't

250. A: Have you got long hair? - No, I............................ got long hair.
ⓐ have ⓑ haven't ⓒ has ⓓ hasn't

251. A: Have you got long hair? - No, I............................ got short hair.
ⓐ have ⓑ haven't ⓒ has ⓓ hasn't

252. .... Samir's dad got a beard?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Has ⓒ Does ⓓ Have

253. .... Samir and his dad got a beard?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Has ⓒ Does ⓓ Have





254. Shall I........................ you some water?
ⓐ bring ⓑ brought ⓒ brings ⓓ bringing

255. Can your brother .... fast?
ⓐ runs ⓑ ran ⓒ run ⓓ running

256. .... Mona drive a car ?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Has ⓒ Can ⓓ Is

257. My father is very busy. He .... take many holidays.
ⓐ can't ⓑ has ⓒ hasn't ⓓ can

258. He can't swim, but he .... football very well.
ⓐ can ⓑ can't ⓒ couldn't ⓓ wouldn't

259. She............................. speak English well. she's very good at it.
ⓐ can ⓑ can't ⓒ won't ⓓ hasn't

260. At school, you .... talk to your friends at break.
ⓐ can ⓑ can't ⓒ aren't ⓓ must

261. She's only five, but she............................. read and write.
ⓐ can ⓑ can't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ won't

262. We can .... money to help the poor.
ⓐ give ⓑ gave ⓒ giving ⓓ to give

263. My sisters ....long hair.
ⓐ has ⓑ have got ⓒ has got ⓓ are

264. .... drive a car?
ⓐ He can ⓑ He can't ⓒ Can he ⓓ Can

265. You can't............................. under water.
ⓐ live ⓑ lives ⓒ living ⓓ lived

266. I don't like .... this story again.
ⓐ reading ⓑ read ⓒ reads ⓓ to reads

267. I don't like .... this story again.
ⓐ to reading ⓑ read ⓒ reads ⓓ to read

268. I don't prefer .... this story again.
ⓐ reading ⓑ read ⓒ reads ⓓ to read

269. I wouldn't like .... this story again.
ⓐ reading ⓑ read ⓒ reads ⓓ to read

270. I wouldn't prefer .... this story again.
ⓐ reading ⓑ read ⓒ reads ⓓ to read

271. Does he like .... basketball ?
ⓐ play ⓑ playing ⓒ plays ⓓ played

272. .... Sama like watching TV ?
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Are ⓓ Is

273. .... she like watching TV?-Yes, she does.
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Doing ⓓ Don't

274. I prefer drinking coffee to .... tea.
ⓐ drinks ⓑ drinking ⓒ drink ⓓ to drink

275. Menna likes .... very much.
ⓐ paint ⓑ painted ⓒ painting ⓓ paints

276. They love .... about science.
ⓐ learn ⓑ learning ⓒ learned ⓓ learns

277. My brothers and I don't like .... TV after school.
ⓐ watch ⓑ watches ⓒ watched ⓓ watching

278. Habiba doesn't like ....
ⓐ swim ⓑ swims ⓒ swimming ⓓ swam

279. .... Ahmed like reading stories? -Yes, he does.
ⓐ Do ⓑ Does ⓒ Has ⓓ Is

280. The boys.............................. like swimming.
ⓐ don't ⓑ isn't ⓒ aren't ⓓ doesn't

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

The simple present tense
زمن المضارع البسيط

1. Our bus..................(arrive) at 7:00 in the morning.
2. Does he often .... (going) out this evening ?
3. Mr Masaoud .... (go often) to school by bus.
4. My teacher always .... (work) very hard.
5. How often.................................. (do) Sami go swimming a week ?
6. I always.................................. (listens) to the teacher carefully.
7. My brothers usually.............. (watching) TV before they go to bed
8. My father.................................. (plays never) chess at home.
9. When.................................. (do) he arrive?
10. She usually.................................. (eat) meat.
11. We .... (not) play football
12. They.................................. (not) happy because of losing the final match.

13. Mariam.................................. (watching often) TV in bed.
14. She always.................................. (make) dinner for her parents.
15. What time .... (does) students come home from school?
16. My daily routine.................................. (has) the same every school day ?
17. How .... (does) Sherifa and her brothers get to school
18. Parents.................................. (not) like fish.
19. .... (Do) your father a good teacher ?
20. What time .... (do) the English lesson?
21. What time .... (do) the English lesson start?
22. We always .... (getting) up early every day.
23. Why.................................. (do) you always late?
24. we don't often.................................. (has) German.
25. Shall I.................................. (helping) you carry these books?.
26. Mariam .... (not / get) up at 7 am. She gets up at 6:30.
27. Tamer.................................. (be usually) very friendly.
28. When does this plane.................................. (arrives) in Cairo?
29. He .... (never) like walking alone in the streets at night.
30. .... (Does) Ali happy every day when he meets his friends?
31. The music festival .... (don't) end on Monday.
32. My plane to Rome .... (arriving) at 8 A.M. at Rome Airport.
33. Where do you .... (going) every night?
34. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... (don't) visits Alexandria in summer.
35. .... (Do) Amany excited when she has a lot of jobs to do?
36. These delicious cookies .... (always is) made by a small factory in Paris.
37. .... (Does) you go to Sharm El-Sheikh every summer?
38. Jana .... (achieve always) the full mark in every quiz.
39. When do my little boys.................................. (gets) to their bed?
40. She .... (reading) a comic book every night before sleeping.
41. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... (don't) visits Alexandria in summer.
42. Does Mona .... (baked) cookies on her own ?
43. Waleed and Fares .... (not goes) to bed before they wash their teeth.
44. My bus to Cairo .... (arrive) in 2 hours. It's a timetable.

45. Our bus .... (arrive) at 7:00 in the morning.
46. .... (Are) Nada active when she has a lot of jobs to do?
47. Which day .... (do) the exhibition open?
48. Which day .... (do) the exhibition?
49. Which day .... (do) the exhibition opened?
50. Ahmed .... (not) live in Cairo.
51. Ahmed .... (not) lives in Cairo.
52. Ahmed .... (not) in Cairo.
53. One .... (not) watch TV every night.
54. One .... (not) watches TV every night.
55. Someone .... (not) watch TV every night.
56. Someone .... (not) watches TV every night.
57. No one .... (not) watch TV every night.
58. No one .... (not) watches TV every night.
59. He always .... (taking) the bus to school.
60. I always .... (taking) the bus to school.
61. He always .... (taking) the bus to school in the past.
62. He always .... (taking) the bus to school when he was young.
63. A: Does Ahmed do sport every day? B: Yes, he .... (be).
64. A: Does Ahmed do sport every day? B: No, he .... (be).
65. A: .... (Be) Ahmed do sport every day? B: Yes, he does.
66. A: .... (Be) Ahmed do sport every day? B: No, he doesn't.
67. A: .... (Be) Ahmed do sport every day? B: No, he does.
68. A: .... (Be) Ahmed do sport every day? B: Yes, he doesn't.
69. .... (Does) you in Sharm El-Sheikh every summer?
70. .... (Does) you stay in Sharm El-Sheikh every summer?



Language Notes
ملاحظات لغوية

71. .... (Does) I have ice cream, please? -No, you can't.
72. Shall I .... (helping) you, Mona?
73. Nada has .... (getting) some medicine as she is very ill.
74. Let's .... (reads) this scientific book. I think it's very useful.
75. .... (Have) Amira get a new car ?
76. Can Mr Ahmed Masaoud make an easy quiz? -Yes, he .... (do)
77. Let's .... (going) to the aquarium, my friends.
78. Rawda has .... (get) a white dress for her wedding.
79. Shall we .... (gets) some apple juice?
80. Of course! You can .... (comes) to my house later
81. Can you .... (helping) me carry these boxes?
82. .... (Shall) Ali got a beard and a moustache?
83. Merna has .... (getting) some medicine as she is very ill.
84. Let's .... (having) spaghetti and meat balls?
85. .... (We shall play) football right now?
86. .... (Shall) getting your mom a necklace for her birthday?
87. .... (Shall get) your mom a necklace for her birthday?
88. .... (Shall) getting your mom a necklace for her birthday?
89. .... (Let's) get your mom a necklace for her birthday?
90. .... (Shall we) get your mom a necklace for her birthday.
91. .... (How about get) your mom a necklace and help her with housework?
92. .... (How about get) your mom a necklace and helping her with housework?
93. I prefer .... (to listen) to the news on radio.
94. I prefer listening to the news on radio to .... (watches) it on TV.
95. I'd prefer to listen to the news on radio rather than .... (watches) it on TV.
96. I'd prefer .... (listen) to the news on radio.
97. I would love .... (go) to the cinema.
98. They'd hate .... (causing) a problem.
99. It would .... (are) nice for Mona to come with me.
100. It would be good .... (visiting) Alexandria in winter.



COMING HOME

101. I would rather .... (to wears) a tie to work.
102. I would sooner .... (to wears) a tie to work.
103. Would you like .... (have) a cup of tea?
104. Shall we .... (to visit) the Great Grand Museum next week?
105. Why doesn't she .... (speaking) with her mother?
106. How about .... (try) this restaurant?
107. Why don't you .... (buys) a new car? Yours always breaks down.
108. .... (Does) I have ice cream, please? -Yes, you can.
109. Shall I .... (helping) you, Mona?
110. Nada has .... (getting) some medicine as she is very ill.
111. Mohamed Salah .... (not) got straight hair.
112. .... (Have) Amira get a new car ?
113. We .... (get) some books from the old bookshop.
114. .... (Do) Mr Ahmed Masaoud make an easy quiz? -Yes, he can't.
115. .... (Do) Mr Ahmed Masaoud make an easy quiz? -No, he can.
116. They .... (not) got any sandwiches for lunch.
117. Rawda .... (get) a white dress for her wedding.
118. Shall we .... (drinks) some apple juice?
119. Of course! You can .... (comes) to my house later.
120. .... (Has) you get a motorbike?
121. Can you .... (helping) me carry these boxes?
122. Shall we .... (visited) Mr Ahmed Masaoud next week?
123. .... (Do) Ali got a beard and a moustache?
124. Merna has .... (getting) some medicine as she is very ill.
125. I .... (not) got blond curly hair.
126. .... (Have) she got a pen and a notebook?

UNIT 2 HOW ARE YOU FEELING?

تـنـويــــه: تم التدريب على المحادثات وقطع القراءة في مذكرة الشرح



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

281. Aya is a nurse. She helps her .... to get better.
 ⓐ illnesses ⓑ patients ⓒ medicines ⓓ diseases
282. Falafel is a/an.......................... meal in Egypt.
 ⓐ international ⓑ traditional ⓒ modern ⓓ new
283. She works in a hospital. She is working in the children's.......................... at the moment.
 ⓐ word ⓑ award ⓒ ward ⓓ world
284. You mustn't.......................... your car here. It's not allowed.
 ⓐ come ⓑ park ⓒ bark ⓓ carry
285. He sells many things in the street. He has a small.......................... .
 ⓐ basket ⓑ wall ⓒ stall ⓓ farm
286. My little brother is very................. . He always wants to stay at home and watch TV!
 ⓐ dangerous ⓑ boring ⓒ lazy ⓓ active
287. We need a computer engineer to................. our computer because it doesn't work.
 ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ play ⓓ repair
288. I can't come to the park because I.......................... the house today.
 ⓐ clean ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ stay
289. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ....
 ⓐ food stall ⓑ colours ⓒ sign language ⓓ sports
290. Nabila feels ill, so she is.......................... in bed this morning.
 ⓐ cleaning ⓑ spending ⓒ doing ⓓ staying
291. On Saturday, I usually .... time with my cousins.
 ⓐ make ⓑ spend ⓒ do ⓓ stay
292. What time do you.......................... your homework after school?
 ⓐ make ⓑ clean ⓒ do ⓓ stay
293. It is usually easy to.................... with people in other countries if you speak English.
 ⓐ telephone ⓑ spend
 ⓒ write ⓓ communicate



294. He answers customers' calls in a big store. He is a.......................... worker.
ⓐ call-centre ⓑ centre ⓒ ship ⓓ caller

295. The police officer drives around the city to........................ sure that people are safe.
ⓐ take ⓑ do ⓒ make ⓓ have

296. Children should be careful when they buy things from a street food........... .
ⓐ buyer ⓑ seller ⓒ worker ⓓ waiter

297. He likes drawing. He wants to be a/an.......................... .
ⓐ teacher ⓑ doctor ⓒ engineer ⓓ artist

298. A .... person is a person who can't hear.
ⓐ blind ⓑ weak ⓒ deaf ⓓ strong

299. She is learning.......................... . She wants to improve her handwriting.
ⓐ technology ⓑ biology ⓒ geography ⓓ calligraphy

300. He lives next door. He is my.......................... .
ⓐ neighbour ⓑ classmate ⓒ servant ⓓ patient

301. My mother asked me to buy her two.......................... of beans.
ⓐ pieces ⓑ slices ⓒ bottles ⓓ tins

302. I always get up early to .... everything ready for school.
ⓐ get ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ have

303. I always get up early to get everything ready .... my work.
ⓐ for ⓑ to ⓒ on ⓓ by

304. He helped his father to.......................... the hole in the roof of the house.
ⓐ have ⓑ hurt ⓒ take ⓓ repair

305. Children like to go.......................... school trips.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ by

306. My father.......................... me a surprise when he bought me a new bike.
ⓐ borrowed ⓑ lent ⓒ gave ⓓ took

307. To get a good job, you should have many.......................... .
ⓐ skulls ⓑ skills ⓒ scales ⓓ presents

308. My sister likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes.............. .
ⓐ swimming ⓑ seeing ⓒ sewing ⓓ sawing

309. Children should be careful when they use the knife because it's very ....
ⓐ quick ⓑ wet ⓒ sharp ⓓ hard

310. You can catch a plane from a/an.......................... .
ⓐ station ⓑ port ⓒ airport ⓓ hospital

311. When you invite a person to your house, they are your ....
ⓐ grass ⓑ guests ⓒ guess ⓓ glass

312. When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a.......................... .
ⓐ suitcase ⓑ suit ⓒ shopping bag ⓓ handbag

313. My friend's sister is going to get married, so he invited me to her........... .
ⓐ wedding ⓑ birthday ⓒ picnic ⓓ journey

314. My sister is sitting under the tree. She is .... a selfie.
ⓐ doing ⓑ taking ⓒ making ⓓ getting

315. We went on a trip in the .... and slept in tents
ⓐ castle ⓑ cave ⓒ tower ⓓ desert

316. You shouldn't leave a child .... in the house.
ⓐ lonely ⓑ alone ⓒ along ⓓ alike

317. He has no friends. He feels ....
ⓐ lonely ⓑ alone ⓒ along ⓓ alike

318. He has no friends. He is a/an .... boy.
ⓐ lonely ⓑ alone ⓒ along ⓓ alike

319. A.......................... someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
ⓐ child ⓑ teenager ⓒ toddler ⓓ seller

320. It's........... for teenagers to get worried or to feel sad sometimes.
ⓐ happy ⓑ nature ⓒ normal ⓓ better

321. His parents were very .... about his prize.
ⓐ pleased ⓑ worried ⓒ sad ⓓ proud

322. His parents were very .... of his prize.
ⓐ pleased ⓑ worried ⓒ sad ⓓ proud

323. My parents were very proud .... my brother.
ⓐ to ⓑ about ⓒ of ⓓ that

324. My parents were very proud .... my brother who is a doctor.
ⓐ to ⓑ about ⓒ of ⓓ that

325. My parents were very proud .... my brother is a doctor.
ⓐ to ⓑ about ⓒ of ⓓ that

326. My parents were very proud .... help my brother " Dr Ali." .
ⓐ to ⓑ about ⓒ of ⓓ that

327. It's his favourite show because it always.......................... him laugh
ⓐ walks ⓑ takes ⓒ makes ⓓ goes

328. I'm waiting excitedly to get.......................... a plane for the first time.
ⓐ into ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ out of

329. I went with my mother to the market. It was very busy. There were lots of........... .
ⓐ sellers ⓑ crowds ⓒ messengers ⓓ workers

330. Every teacher should .... students kindly.
ⓐ hurt ⓑ wave ⓒ treat ⓓ hit

331. The zebra has.......................... skin.
ⓐ heavy ⓑ colourful ⓒ striped ⓓ plain

332. I like watching films for Ahmed Helmy. He's really ....
ⓐ funny ⓑ boring ⓒ sad ⓓ difficult

333. He wants to be a pilot to.......................... a plane.
ⓐ ride ⓑ drive ⓒ fly ⓓ catch

334. You should be.......................... with your neighbours.
ⓐ friendly ⓑ ugly ⓒ rude ⓓ lazy

335. To feel.............. means feeling happy about the good things in your life.
ⓐ worried ⓑ careful ⓒ grateful ⓓ normal

336. Students who can't see well should sit in the.......................... of the class.
ⓐ foreground ⓑ background ⓒ underground ⓓ playground

337. Students who can see well should sit in the.......................... of the class.
ⓐ foreground ⓑ background ⓒ underground ⓓ playground

338. It's kind to smile.......................... the person you meet.
ⓐ in ⓑ to ⓒ at ⓓ of

339. If there is a problem with your computer system, call the computer.......................... for help .
ⓐ doctor ⓑ nurse ⓒ waiter ⓓ engineer

340. It's.......................... that you couldn't come to my birthday party.
ⓐ happiness ⓑ congratulation ⓒ a shame ⓓ empathy

341. It's.......................... that you couldn't come to my birthday party.
ⓐ happiness ⓑ congratulation ⓒ a pity ⓓ empathy

342. I.......................... you are enjoying your trip.
ⓐ want ⓑ hope ⓒ show ⓓ pass

343. I'm so happy to see you after these long years. I really ....you.
ⓐ lose ⓑ win ⓒ earn ⓓ miss

344. I'm so happy. I have.......................... my exams.
ⓐ succeeded ⓑ passed ⓒ won ⓓ earned

345. I'm so happy. I have.......................... in my exams.
ⓐ succeeded ⓑ passed ⓒ won ⓓ earned

346. I'm so happy. I have.......................... my exams.
ⓐ succeeded in ⓑ passed ⓒ won ⓓ (ⓐ +ⓑ)

347. Try to.......................... the meaning of this word.
ⓐ talk ⓑ make ⓒ read ⓓ guess

348. I often help my mum.......................... our food.
ⓐ prepare ⓑ repair ⓒ sell ⓓ do

349. Teachers should speak kindly.......................... their students.
ⓐ at ⓑ for ⓒ to ⓓ by

350. Everyone congratulated me.......................... passing my maths test.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ with ⓓ by

351. My last trip was.......................... . I'll go there again.
ⓐ boring ⓑ amazing ⓒ terrible ⓓ bad

352. We always go to our football .... to keep fit.
ⓐ practise ⓑ practice ⓒ fan ⓓ experience

353. After the match, the.......................... told me that I would be in the football team.
ⓐ worker ⓑ coach ⓒ surgeon ⓓ volunteer

354. I am looking forward to.......................... Luxor and Aswan.
ⓐ visit ⓑ visits ⓒ visiting ⓓ visited

355. I am looking forward .... Luxor and Aswan.
ⓐ to visit ⓑ visits ⓒ visiting ⓓ to visiting

356. Deaf people use .... language to communicate.
ⓐ site ⓑ sail ⓒ size ⓓ sign

357. Special pens and brushes are used to make beautiful writing known as................. .
ⓐ biography ⓑ photography ⓒ calligraphy ⓓ grams

358. Mazin is .... he can't hear well.
ⓐ blind ⓑ deaf ⓒ lane ⓓ sunny

359. Azza is good at .... new clothes with a needle.
ⓐ washing ⓑ buying ⓒ sailing ⓓ sewing

360. Deaf people communicate .... sign language
ⓐ with ⓑ on ⓒ for ⓓ in

361. Deaf people communicate .... others by using sign language.
ⓐ with ⓑ on ⓒ for ⓓ in

362. Deaf people communicate .... using sign language.
ⓐ with ⓑ by ⓒ for ⓓ in

363. I often communicate .... my relatives on happy occasions.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ with

364. Doctors look .... patients at hospitals.
ⓐ to ⓑ for ⓒ forward ⓓ after

365. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ....
ⓐ food stall ⓑ colours ⓒ sign language ⓓ sports

366. If you are tired, why don't you.......................... a rest?
ⓐ make ⓑ have ⓒ be ⓓ do

367. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking.................... drinking some hot coffee.
ⓐ up ⓑ after ⓒ forward to ⓓ for

368. Everything in the world that is not made by humans called ....
ⓐ grateful ⓑ alone ⓒ nature ⓓ normal

369. A .... prepares food for people to eat in the streets.
ⓐ police officer ⓑ worker
ⓒ street-food seller ⓓ computer engineer

370. We .... her on her marriage.
ⓐ interested ⓑ succeeded ⓒ congratulated ⓓ failed

371. Congratulations .... your final exams.
ⓐ to pass ⓑ passing ⓒ on passing ⓓ on pass

372. He is .... He doesn't make noise.
ⓐ quit ⓑ quite ⓒ quiet ⓓ quick

373. He is .... calm . He doesn't make noise.
ⓐ quit ⓑ quite ⓒ quiet ⓓ quick

374. We went .... a school trip last week.
ⓐ to ⓑ on ⓒ for ⓓ in

375. We are .... a school trip next week.
ⓐ going on ⓑ going to ⓒ doing on ⓓ doing to

376. He is sitting .... the fountain in the garden.
ⓐ on ⓑ to ⓒ by ⓓ of

377. He is sitting next .... the fountain in the garden.
ⓐ on ⓑ to ⓒ by ⓓ of

378. He is sitting in front .... the fountain in the garden.
ⓐ on ⓑ to ⓒ by ⓓ of

379. They're still trying to think .... a name for the baby.
ⓐ on ⓑ to ⓒ by ⓓ of

380. This table is made .... wood.
ⓐ form ⓑ into ⓒ for ⓓ of

381. The carpenter makes wood .... table.
ⓐ form ⓑ into ⓒ for ⓓ of

382. Glass is made .... sand.
ⓐ form ⓑ into ⓒ for ⓓ of

383. Sand is made .... glass.
ⓐ form ⓑ into ⓒ for ⓓ of

384. This table is made .... you.
ⓐ form ⓑ into ⓒ for ⓓ of

385. .... the weekend, I always go to club to do sports.
ⓐ For ⓑ In ⓒ On ⓓ At

386. There seems .... a problem.
ⓐ be ⓑ to be ⓒ to be being ⓓ being

387. There a problem .... the keyboard.
ⓐ for ⓑ by ⓒ to ⓓ with

388. The place is very busy. This means it is ....
ⓐ free ⓑ crowded ⓒ distant ⓓ far

389. The opposite of the word "safe" is ....

ⓐ protected ⓑ secure ⓒ dangerous ⓓ useful

390. To turn the verb "love" into an adjective, we add ....

ⓐ -ity ⓑ -al ⓒ -le ⓓ -ly

391. The words "bored" and "uninterested" are ".................. ".

ⓐ antonyms ⓑ synonyms ⓒ opposites ⓓ pronouns

392. If you are active, this means you are not ....

ⓐ lazy ⓑ big ⓒ safe ⓓ excited

393. I live .... a large flat.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ with

394. I live .... 21 Qahbona Street.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ with

395. I live .... my family.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ with

396. I live .... an island.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ with

397. Nabila feels ill, so she is staying .... bed this morning.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ with

398. Nabila feels ill, so she is staying .... home this morning.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ with

399. Nabila feels ill, so she is staying .... Nada this morning.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ with

400. He lives in a .... flat.

ⓐ love ⓑ lovely ⓒ loved ⓓ loves

401. They spend most of their time .... their boat.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

402. They go to work .... their boat.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

403. They go to work .... boat.

ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

404. She's starting to get excited .... the wedding.

ⓐ out ⓑ about ⓒ that ⓓ to

405. He sounded excited .... hear from him.

ⓐ out ⓑ about ⓒ that ⓓ to

406. I'm so excited .... we're going to New York.

ⓐ out ⓑ about ⓒ that ⓓ to

407. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle .... a present.

ⓐ by ⓑ as ⓒ for ⓓ to



408. My .... brother is an engineer.
ⓐ elder ⓑ old ⓒ older ⓓ elders

409. You should respect your ....
ⓐ elder ⓑ old ⓒ older ⓓ elders

410. My friend is ....
ⓐ elder ⓑ old ⓒ older ⓓ elders

411. My friend is .... than me .
ⓐ elder ⓑ old ⓒ older ⓓ elders

412. My friend's sister is going to .... married, so he invited me to her wedding.
ⓐ have ⓑ get ⓒ make ⓓ do

413. He is playing the piano .... usual.
ⓐ by ⓑ as ⓒ for ⓓ to

414. I'm so grateful .... all your help.
ⓐ by ⓑ as ⓒ for ⓓ to

415. He .... many things kind for me.
ⓐ did ⓑ made ⓒ got ⓓ had

416. This photo is .... the end of the day.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

417. Susan smiled .... him and waved.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

418. .... the background, you can see my college friends.
ⓐ In ⓑ On ⓒ At ⓓ By

419. .... the background, you can see my college friends.
ⓐ In ⓑ On ⓒ At ⓓ By

420. In the .... of the photo, we can see a man sitting under a tree.
ⓐ ground ⓑ underground ⓒ middle ⓓ top

421. In the .... of the photo, we can see a man sitting under a tree. He is near.
ⓐ background ⓑ foreground ⓒ mid ⓓ top

422. In the .... of the photo, we can see a man sitting under a tree. He is far.
ⓐ background ⓑ foreground ⓒ mid ⓓ top

423. He is laughing .... jokes.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

424. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... worried about something yesterday.
ⓐ feel ⓑ made ⓒ got ⓓ had

425. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... worried about something yesterday.
ⓐ felt ⓑ made ⓒ get ⓓ had

426. Mr Ali get ....
ⓐ confuse ⓑ confusing ⓒ confused ⓓ confused

427. when we rise up in the morning, and it is a fine day, we feel................ .
ⓐ pleasant ⓑ please ⓒ pleases ⓓ pleasing

428. He is .... at school.
ⓐ doing good ⓑ making well
ⓒ doing well ⓓ making good

429. He is .... good.
ⓐ so a ⓑ so ⓒ such ⓓ such a

430. He is .... good boy.
ⓐ so a ⓑ so ⓒ such ⓓ such a

Grammar - UNIT 2 -

القواعد اللغوية

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

431. She .... you some photos now.
ⓐ sending ⓑ sends ⓒ is sent ⓓ is sending

432. Everyone .... at home at the moment.
ⓐ staying ⓑ is staying ⓒ are staying ⓓ stayed

433. I'm playing chess online. I'm .... at the moment.
ⓐ win ⓑ wins ⓒ winning ⓓ won

434. At the moment, students .... to a story.
ⓐ listened ⓑ are listening ⓒ listens ⓓ listen

435. What book ....now?
ⓐ you are reading ⓑ did you read
ⓒ are you reading ⓓ do you read

436. ....they using a tablet at the moment?
ⓐ Does ⓑ Is ⓒ Do ⓓ Are

437. Hany ....writing a text message now.
ⓐ aren't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ isn't ⓓ don't

438. Are the students in your class ....?
ⓐ are working ⓑ work ⓒ working ⓓ works

439. They're ....some cakes in the kitchen with their mother.
ⓐ make ⓑ makes ⓒ made ⓓ making

440. Look! the boy is ....the ball.
ⓐ kicking ⓑ kick ⓒ kicks ⓓ kicked

441. My uncle is reading a newspaper ....
ⓐ every day ⓑ tomorrow ⓒ at the moment ⓓ yesterday

442. My uncle reads a newspaper ....
ⓐ every day ⓑ tomorrow ⓒ at the moment ⓓ yesterday

443. My uncle will read a newspaper ....
ⓐ every day ⓑ tomorrow ⓒ at the moment ⓓ yesterday

444. My uncle read a newspaper ....
ⓐ every day ⓑ tomorrow ⓒ at the moment ⓓ yesterday

445. What .... doing at the moment?
ⓐ is he ⓑ he is ⓒ he does ⓓ does he

446. Sami .... sign language at school now.
ⓐ learns ⓑ learning ⓒ learn ⓓ is learning

447. Mr Masaoud .... in a lovely flat.
ⓐ lives ⓑ living ⓒ live ⓓ is living

448. Eman and her neighbours .... Mr Masaoud's flat.
ⓐ are repairing ⓑ repair ⓒ repairs ⓓ is repairing

449. What .... Manal making for her uncle ?
ⓐ do ⓑ does ⓒ is ⓓ are

450. I always............................ milk for breakfast.
ⓐ am drinking ⓑ drink ⓒ drinks ⓓ drinking

451. Ali............................ a jacket today because it is very hot.
ⓐ not wear ⓑ isn't wearing ⓒ don't wear ⓓ doesn't wear

452. My father............................ in a bank in the city centre.
ⓐ works ⓑ worked ⓒ am working ⓓ work

453. Amr............................ to work by train every day.
ⓐ traveling ⓑ travels ⓒ is traveling ⓓ travel

454. I can't come to the phone now because I............................ a shower.
ⓐ am having ⓑ have ⓒ will have ⓓ am doing

455. We can't play tennis today since it ....
ⓐ rains ⓑ rained ⓒ is raining ⓓ rain

456. What do you do after school? - I............................ a nap.
ⓐ usually took ⓑ took usually ⓒ take usually ⓓ usually take

457. My father............................ me to school.
ⓐ taking ⓑ sometimes takes
ⓒ sometimes take ⓓ is sometimes taking

458. On Sundays, they............................ volleyball in physical education class.
ⓐ plays ⓑ play ⓒ will be played ⓓ are playing

459. Hany often go to school on foot, but today his father................ him to school.
ⓐ drives ⓑ was driving ⓒ is driving ⓓ driving

460. .... sitting next to your best friend ?
ⓐ You do ⓑ do You ⓒ Are you ⓓ You are

461. .... the students in your class working ?
ⓐ Are ⓑ Have ⓒ Can ⓓ Do

462. .... the students in your class work ?
ⓐ Are ⓑ Have ⓒ Does ⓓ Do

463. .... the students in your class worked ?
ⓐ Are ⓑ Have ⓒ Can ⓓ Do

464. She isn't........................... at the hospital today.
ⓐ work ⓑ working ⓒ works ⓓ worked

465. What........................... doing at the moment ?
ⓐ they are ⓑ are they ⓒ they were ⓓ were they

466. Birds always........................... in the early morning.
ⓐ singing ⓑ to sing ⓒ sings ⓓ sing

467. Sama and Hend always........................... in the home.
ⓐ help ⓑ helping ⓒ helps ⓓ to help

468. Basel is a computer engineer. He usually........................... computers.
ⓐ repair ⓑ is repairing ⓒ repairing ⓓ repairs

469. The police officer........................... a school today.
ⓐ visiting ⓑ visits ⓒ is visiting ⓓ visit

470. Nader........... in the shop, but his brother is ill so he is helping there today.
ⓐ isn't usually working ⓑ not usually work
ⓒ don't usually work ⓓ doesn't usually work

471. Where is Ali? in his room. He........................... his homework.
ⓐ does ⓑ do ⓒ have done ⓓ is doing

472. It...........................quite heavily. Perhaps we shouldn't go out tonight.
ⓐ rains ⓑ is raining ⓒ raining ⓓ rain

473. Huda and Fareeda...........................hard because they have an English test next week.
ⓐ studies ⓑ is studying ⓒ studying ⓓ are studying



Adverbs of Manner
ظروف الكيفية

474. My friend sews ....
ⓐ bad ⓑ worst ⓒ worse ⓓ badly

475. Mr Ahmed speaks English ....
ⓐ well ⓑ good ⓒ best ⓓ better

476. The cat is sitting in the sun.......................... .
ⓐ laziest ⓑ lazier ⓒ lazy ⓓ lazily

477. The cat is ....sitting in the sun.
ⓐ laziest ⓑ lazier ⓒ lazy ⓓ lazily

478. The teacher treats all her children ....
ⓐ kinder ⓑ kindest ⓒ kindly ⓓ kind

479. That bird is flying very ....
ⓐ careful ⓑ quick ⓒ loud ⓓ fast

480. The guests found their hotel ....after they bought a map of the city.
ⓐ easy ⓑ easier ⓒ ease ⓓ easily

481. It is important to drive ....when it is raining.
ⓐ carefully ⓑ quickly ⓒ loudly ⓓ carelessly

482. Our football team will win because they are playing very ....
ⓐ well ⓑ quick ⓒ bad ⓓ good

483. Hamid did very .... in his exams last week.
ⓐ well ⓑ fast ⓒ bad ⓓ good

484. Huda's uncle always sings ....when he's working.
ⓐ slow ⓑ happy ⓒ happily ⓓ quiet

485. Amal always paints.......................... .
ⓐ beautiful ⓑ happy ⓒ beautifully ⓓ good

486. The class listened ....to their teacher.
ⓐ beautifully ⓑ quickly ⓒ easily ⓓ carefully

487. He climbed the hill.......................... . He wasn't tired at all.
ⓐ badly ⓑ friendly ⓒ hardly ⓓ easily

488. At the end of the school year, some students try .... to make up for the lost time.
ⓐ hardship ⓑ hardly ⓒ hard ⓓ hardest

489. The driver of the school bus drives ....
ⓐ carefully ⓑ careful ⓒ careless ⓓ slow

490. He is .... eating.
ⓐ hungry ⓑ angry ⓒ hungrily ⓓ angrily

491. He arrived an hour..........................but he caught the bus .
ⓐ late ⓑ lately ⓒ fast ⓓ hard

492. Please, speak.........................., people at the back can't hear you.
ⓐ politely ⓑ wisely ⓒ loudly ⓓ carelessly

493. He feels ....today.
ⓐ happy ⓑ happily ⓒ more happily ⓓ many happy

494. Mr Masaoud is ....at speaking English.
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ more well ⓓ more better

495. Mr Masaoud is speaking English ....
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ more well ⓓ more better

496. Mr Masaoud is speaking .... English.
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ more well ⓓ more better

497. This movie sounds very ....
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ more well ⓓ more better

498. Mona is as .... as Soha at playing the piano.
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ more well ⓓ more better

499. Mona is playing the piano as .... as Soha.
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ more well ⓓ more better

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

The Present Continuous Tense
زمن المضارع المستمر

127. You .... (write) an email now.
128. I .... (drink) tea at the moment
129. The farmers .... (grow) plants and trees at the moment.
130. Look! He .... (painted) his wall in black and white.
131. .... (Does) you going to the castle right now?
132. Mohamed and Ibrahim .... (had) English lessons at school every day.
133. I can see Jana over there. She .... (talk) to Bassem.
134. Nabil and tamer.. (not) watch TV everyday.
135. .... (Do) you wearing a school uniform?
136. Mr Osman.. (live)in a lovely flat.
137. At the moment, Hany .... (playing) football in the club.
138. We are going to our uncle .... (on) the moment.
139. Manal and Mona.. (study) calligraphy every day.

140. .... (Does) Ali playing football now ?
141. Does he often... (goes) out this evening ?
142. My sister usually... (go) to school by bus.
143. My brother... (play) football at the moment.
144. Eman and her neighbours.. (repair) his flat now.
145. Why... (be) you laughing at the moment?
146. Fady... (not wear) a jacket today because it is very hot.
147. Fady.................................... (not wear) a jacket yesterday because it was very hot.
148. Fady........................ (not wear) a jacket at six yesterday because it was very hot.
149. The police officer .... (talk)at a school today.
150. Nader.................................... (not usually work) in the shop .
151. You won't find Mona at home right now. She .... (studies) in the library.
152. My sister usually .... (going) to school by bus.
153. The farmers .... (grow) plants and trees at the moment.
154. Look! He .... (painted) his wall in black and white.
155. .... (Does) you going to the castle right now?
156. We made all the arrangements; we .... (give) a wedding party.
157. He .... (leave) work in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.
158. The government .... (build) a new school. Everything is arranged.
159. Don't shout! Your sister .... (slept).
160. She can't speak to you since she .... (have) a shower.
161. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... (not visit) Alexandria tomorrow.
162. Hazem arranged that he .... (visit) his family in the countryside.
163. We .... (have) a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
164. The farmers .... (grow) plants and trees at the moment.
165. Look! He .... (painted) his wall in black and white.
166. .... (Does) you going to the castle right now?
167. The mechanic .... (repair) at the moment.
168. We made all the arrangements; we .... (give) a wedding party.
169. He .... (leave) work in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.
170. The government .... (build) a new school. Everything is arranged.
171. Don't shout! Your sister .... (slept).



172. She can't speak to you since she ....(have) a shower.
173. She couldn't speak to you since she ....(have) a shower.
174. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... (not visit) Alexandria tomorrow.
175. Hazem arranged that he .... (visit) his family in the countryside.
176. We ....(have) a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
177. Ayman .... (meet) his friends next week. It's arranged.
178. .... (you travel) to Canada tomorrow? -Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa.
179. We cannot use classroom five tomorrow because they .... (paint) the walls.
180. .... (Are) your grandfather go for a walk with you ?
181. Our sister .... (get) married next month.
182. Sh! Be quiet! He .... (spoke) to his young brothers.
183. Is Nada .... (draw) this great picture now?
184. The man .... (grow) plants and trees at the moment.
185. Mona .... (travel) to the USA in the morning tomorrow.
186. Emad .... (not eat) fish at the moment.
187. Mr Ahmed Masaoud is going shopping .... (every day) .
188. They can't eat right now as they .... (study) their lessons.
189. .... (Does) they meeting their friends at the restaurant?
190. It's prepared. We .... (go) to the Red Sea this summer.
191. The difficult lesson .... (explain) now.
192. I can't meet you tonight as I .... (revise) for the exam.
193. They're .... (discuss) this problem at the next meeting.
194. He ....(visit) the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. He bought the tickets.
195. Don't forget that our neighbours .... (come) for dinner this evening.
196. You can't stay in the room now; workers .... (paint) it right now.
197. Who .... (you wait) for at the moment?
198. Why are the workers .... (dig) here?
199. Rami .... (doesn't play) football now; he is studying at home.
200. Amany.......... (travel) tomorrow. She has got the tickets.
201. Look, the child .... (lie) on the floor.
202. Look, the manager's car.......... (coming) over there.



Adverbs of Manner
ظروف الكيفية

203. If you walk so .... (slow), you will miss the bus.
204. If you are so .... (slowly), you will miss the bus.
205. The lesson is easy. I can study it .... (easy).
206. She looked .... (happy) at the children.
207. She looked .... (happily) yesterday.
208. I'm waiting.. (excited) to get on a plane or the first time.
209. He is shouting and speaking.. (angry).
210. She usually arrives.. (lately).
211. Heba is a .... (love)student. She is kind and pleasant.
212. Mohamed runs .... (fast).
213. He seems .... (happier) today.
214. He works very .... (hardly) .
215. The exam was very .... (hardly) .
216. My friend sews.. (bad).
217. The children are singing.. (loud) in the playground
218. As there was much time, we walked to school.. (slow).
219. Every one admires her because she plays the violin very.............................. (good).
220. They are singing.. (happy).
221. A The teacher treats all her children.. (kind).
222. She entered the room................. (quiet)so that she would not wake the baby up.
223. She is .... (hungry) eating her lunch.



UNIT 3 GREAT JOBS



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

500. A .... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.
ⓐ team ⓑ charity ⓒ coach ⓓ competition
501. The World Cup is a football................ between countries from all around the world.
ⓐ lesson ⓑ stadium ⓒ competition ⓓ team
502. There are usually six people in a volleyball......................
ⓐ captain ⓑ stadium ⓒ team ⓓ player
503. Hassan is playing in the tennis...................... at the sports club today.
ⓐ pool ⓑ stadium ⓒ club ⓓ final
504. A/An .... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.
ⓐ event ⓑ scientist ⓒ worker ⓓ hero
505. The................ Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in2019.
ⓐ poor ⓑ junior ⓒ general ⓓ moral
506. I hope Egypt will...................... the competition.
ⓐ earn ⓑ gain ⓒ beat ⓓ win
507. .... is A sport with seven players. They score by throwing the ball into a goal.
ⓐ Tennis ⓑ Basketball ⓒ Handball ⓓ Football
508. Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first...................... nuclear scientist.
ⓐ male ⓑ female ⓒ girl ⓓ daughter
509. A...................... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
ⓐ sports coach ⓑ scientist ⓒ teacher ⓓ professor
510. Dr Magdy Yacoub looks after children with heart ....
ⓐ trips ⓑ competitions ⓒ problems ⓓ experiments
511. The Egyptian player won the gold medal, he's a real...................... .
ⓐ coach ⓑ junior ⓒ hero ⓓ trainer
512. A player should practise more to...................... his skills in a sport.
ⓐ lose ⓑ improve ⓒ climb ⓓ make
513. We always .... experiments at the school lab every Monday.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ look ⓓ fly

514. Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first female .... scientist.
ⓐ nuclear ⓑ chemist ⓒ physicist ⓓ biologist

515. A............. knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
ⓐ sports coach ⓑ surgeon ⓒ police officer ⓓ hero

516. In handball, players score by...................... the ball into a goal.
ⓐ touching ⓑ throwing ⓒ heading ⓓ saving

517. Scientists do many experiments to find.....................for many illnesses.
ⓐ treatments ⓑ developments ⓒ moments ⓓ monuments

518. My grandfather is my .... He helped many people in his village and built a school.
ⓐ thief ⓑ hero ⓒ player ⓓ driver

519. When I was little, a thief.......... me and a police officer saved me and arrested him.
ⓐ attacked ⓑ attracted ⓒ won ⓓ earned

520. He...................... the number one chess player in his family.
ⓐ gave ⓑ made ⓒ took ⓓ became

521. The...................... Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018.
ⓐ senior ⓑ final ⓒ nuclear ⓓ ancient

522. Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup ....
ⓐ Final ⓑ Total ⓒ Ball ⓓ Goal

523. The Egyptian handball team won an important...................... in2020.
ⓐ development ⓑ experiment ⓒ competition ⓓ completion

524. .... is a sport with seven players in a team.
ⓐ Tennis ⓑ Boxing ⓒ Snorkelling ⓓ Handball

525. A .... is a girl or woman.
ⓐ man ⓑ female ⓒ male ⓓ child

526. Ibrahim Hamato is an amazing man who plays table tennis............. Egypt
ⓐ to ⓑ by ⓒ for ⓓ with

527. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work................ a surgeon for a long time ago.
ⓐ alike ⓑ as ⓒ like ⓓ such

528. A/An .... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.
ⓐ organisation ⓑ emergency ⓒ charity ⓓ crescent

529. The .... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.
ⓐ mountain ⓑ earthquake ⓒ countryside ⓓ crescent

530. Mona's mother is a/an................ at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work.
ⓐ coach ⓑ volunteer ⓒ patient ⓓ adult

531. You can only open this door in a/an...................... , such as a fire.
ⓐ pleasure ⓑ charity ⓒ emergency ⓓ organisation

532. A...................... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
ⓐ prison ⓑ charity ⓒ museum ⓓ theater

533. The heart...................... blood around the body.
ⓐ takes in ⓑ drinks ⓒ pumps ⓓ plants

534. Huda went to a surgeon to...................... the cut in her hand.
ⓐ cook ⓑ break ⓒ sew ⓓ plant

535. The little child...................... off his bike and broke his leg.
ⓐ felt ⓑ filled ⓒ failed ⓓ fell

536. My grandmother was born in 1955 and my............. grandmother was born in 1930!
ⓐ big ⓑ senior ⓒ high ⓓ great

537. .... is usually made of gold.
ⓐ Furniture ⓑ Jewellery ⓒ Information ⓓ Sheets

538. The...................... take in air and help us to breathe.
ⓐ lungs ⓑ arms ⓒ eyes ⓓ ears

539. .... work day and night to find a medicine for Corona Virus.
ⓐ Surgeons ⓑ Scientists ⓒ Seniors ⓓ Heroes

540. The...................... tells the parts of our body what to do.
ⓐ heart ⓑ stomach ⓒ eye ⓓ brain

541. A natural...................... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake.
ⓐ water ⓑ science ⓒ gas ⓓ disaster

542. If you are.........of someone, you feel pleased with them. This is because think they are or have done something very good.
ⓐ proud ⓑ bored ⓒ interested ⓓ keen

543. Adam fell off his bike and has a big...................... on his arm.
ⓐ burn ⓑ infection ⓒ cut ⓓ pump

544. I always give money to a/an .... that helps poor children.
ⓐ medicine ⓑ library ⓒ history ⓓ charity

545. Can you tell me the...................... of the brain ?
ⓐ homework ⓑ job ⓒ function ⓓ work

546. After the bad accident , The boy was taken to hospital with............. head injuries.
ⓐ great ⓑ safe ⓒ small ⓓ serious

547. When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the .... ?
ⓐ side ⓑ earth ⓒ countryside ⓓ continent

548. My sister has passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very.......... of her.
ⓐ worried ⓑ pleased ⓒ proud ⓓ crowded

549. The lungs take in air and help us to...................... .
ⓐ breeze ⓑ breath ⓒ freeze ⓓ breathe

550. The lungs take in air and help us to take ....
ⓐ breeze ⓑ breath ⓒ freeze ⓓ breathe

551. Lina's cousin in hospital with an eye ....
ⓐ infected ⓑ infect ⓒ infection ⓓ infectious

552. This nurse won a prize for her..................... work.
ⓐ hero ⓑ useless ⓒ heroic ⓓ ugly

553. This nurse won a prize as she is ....
ⓐ hero ⓑ useless ⓒ heroic ⓓ ugly

554. This nurse won a prize as she is a / an ....
ⓐ hero ⓑ useless ⓒ heroic ⓓ ugly

555. This nurse won a prize as she is a / an .... woman.
ⓐ hero ⓑ useless ⓒ heroic ⓓ ugly

556. My father works as a/an..................... in a big factory.
ⓐ manager ⓑ teacher ⓒ tour guide ⓓ farmer

557. Good people work..................... to achieve their goals.
ⓐ hardly ⓑ difficult ⓒ easily ⓓ hard

558. Some people are scared..................... ants.
ⓐ of ⓑ about ⓒ to ⓓ at

559. Are you..................... that you can answer this question?
ⓐ able ⓑ afraid ⓒ sure ⓓ sad

560. Parents always.................. their children first and do their best for them.
ⓐ put ⓑ throw ⓒ cut ⓓ clean

561. What's the..................... why you're leaving your new job, Samah?
ⓐ season ⓑ cause ⓒ reason ⓓ question

562. What's the..................... of leaving your new job, Samah?
ⓐ season ⓑ cause ⓒ reason ⓓ question

563. What's the..................... for leaving your new job, Samah?
ⓐ season ⓑ cause ⓒ reason ⓓ question

564. What's the..................... to leave your new job, Samah?
ⓐ season ⓑ cause ⓒ reason ⓓ question

565. This the reason .... he came late.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ why ⓓ to

566. This the reason .... coming late.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ why ⓓ to

567. This the cause .... coming late.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ why ⓓ to

568. This the reason .... come late.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ why ⓓ to

569. She added many reason .... the list.
ⓐ to ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ why

570. My house is very big. It has a lot of..................... .
ⓐ medicine ⓑ experience ⓒ information ⓓ furniture

571. I don't know much about my family...................... .
ⓐ history ⓑ date ⓒ geography ⓓ maths

572. My sister is a...................... for the Red Crescent.
ⓐ teacher ⓑ scientist ⓒ volunteer ⓓ charity

573. Street...................... help to keep our cities clean.
ⓐ builders ⓑ makers ⓒ walkers ⓓ cleaners

574. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English...................... .
ⓐ too ⓑ two ⓒ to ⓓ twice

575. I think rubbish...................... can be heroes.
ⓐ reviewers ⓑ managers ⓒ collectors ⓓ bakers

576. The government should spend more on ....
ⓐ infection ⓑ education ⓒ pollution ⓓ smoking

577. Teachers try their...................... to make us good persons.
ⓐ less ⓑ mess ⓒ best ⓓ list

578. Some words...................... me like "too" and "to" when I hear them.
ⓐ learn ⓑ keep ⓒ mean ⓓ confuse

579. After having a/an...................... , he agreed to give me extra money,
ⓐ education ⓑ discussion ⓒ reason ⓓ expression

580. I went to the museum and saw many............of Ancient Egyptians there.
ⓐ statues ⓑ emails ⓒ selfies ⓓ villas

581. My father is the person who...................... for our needs.
ⓐ does ⓑ makes ⓒ buys ⓓ pays

582. Internet booking is useful...................... people who want a short break.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ for

583. Nour El Sherbini won the world squash...................... in 2020
ⓐ championship ⓑ painting ⓒ test ⓓ race

584. This great charity helps children...................... heart problems.
ⓐ with ⓑ by ⓒ in ⓓ on

585. It's easy to...................... what life in Romans times was like there.
ⓐ get ⓑ imagine ⓒ need ⓓ visit

586. Paper is made .... wood.
ⓐ from ⓑ out ⓒ of ⓓ in

587. This door is made .... wood.
ⓐ from ⓑ out ⓒ of ⓓ in

588. Why is .... important?
ⓐ time work ⓑ work hard ⓒ work team ⓓ teamwork

589. Why is .... important?
ⓐ hard work ⓑ work hard ⓒ work team ⓓ work time

590. My favourite .... is basketball.
ⓐ sport ⓑ sports ⓒ sport's ⓓ sports'

591. My favourite .... are basketball and tennis.
ⓐ sport ⓑ sports ⓒ sport's ⓓ sports'

592. My favourite .... star is Messi.
ⓐ sport ⓑ sports ⓒ sport's ⓓ sports'

593. Mohamed Salah is a good ....
ⓐ sport ⓑ sports ⓒ sport's ⓓ sports'

594. My favourite .... event is the World Cup.
ⓐ sporting ⓑ sports ⓒ sport's ⓓ sports'

595. A...................... coach teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
ⓐ sporting ⓑ sports ⓒ sport's ⓓ sports'

596. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... in 1998.
ⓐ was bear ⓑ born ⓒ was born ⓓ is born

597. Mr Masaoud was born .... 1998.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

598. Mr Masaoud was born .... June,1998.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

599. Mr Masaoud was born .... 15th, June,1998.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

600. Mr Masaoud was born .... June, 15th, 1998.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

601. Mr Masaoud was born .... June, 15th.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

602. Mr Masaoud was born .... June.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

603. Mr Masaoud was born .... the 15th of June.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

604. Mr Masaoud was born .... Monday.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

605. Mr Masaoud was born .... 6 PM.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

606. Mr Masaoud was born .... a family in Sharkia.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

607. Mr Masaoud was born .... Sharkia.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

608. Mr Masaoud was born .... Qahbona Village.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

609. Samira Mousa studied science .... Cairo.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

610. Samira Mousa studied science .... Cairo University.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ into

611. .... Fatma Ismail was born in 1935.
ⓐ Khedive ⓑ Prince ⓒ Princess ⓓ President

612. Fatma Ismail was the daughter of .... Ismail.
ⓐ Khedive ⓑ Prince ⓒ Princess ⓓ President

613. Fatma Ismail became a .... of Egypt's first national university.
ⓐ matron ⓑ patron ⓒ captain ⓓ volunteer

614. The teacher .... Mr Masaoud is my brother.
ⓐ call ⓑ is called ⓒ is calling ⓓ called

615. The teacher who .... Mr Masaoud is my brother.
ⓐ call ⓑ is called ⓒ is calling ⓓ called

616. The teacher .... Mr Masaoud.
ⓐ call ⓑ is called ⓒ is calling ⓓ called

617. People .... the university the Egyptian University from 1908 to 1940.
ⓐ call ⓑ is called ⓒ is calling ⓓ called

618. The Egyptian University is now .... Cairo University.
ⓐ call ⓑ is called ⓒ is calling ⓓ called

619. The Egyptian University .... Cairo University.
ⓐ call ⓑ is called ⓒ is calling ⓓ called

620. I know all about her .... problems.
ⓐ health ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ heal

621. You should look after your ....
ⓐ health ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ heal

622. To be .... , eat fresh fruit and vegetables.
ⓐ health ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ heal

623. We all hope to live .... lives.
ⓐ health ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ heal

624. Eating chocolate is ....
ⓐ health ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ heal

625. I volunteer for the Red Crescent when is a .... emergency.
ⓐ health ⓑ unhealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ heal

626. They won the final match .... Tunisia 27-23.
ⓐ for ⓑ with ⓒ against ⓓ from

627. He is good .... doing sports.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ about ⓓ for

628. He is bad .... doing sports.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ about ⓓ for

629. He plays .... an important team.
ⓐ at ⓑ on ⓒ about ⓓ for

630. He is a heart patient. The word "patient" here is a / an ....
ⓐ noun ⓑ verb ⓒ adjective ⓓ adverb

631. The doctor saw another patient. The word "patient" here is a / an ....
ⓐ noun ⓑ verb ⓒ adjective ⓓ adverb

632. You'll just have to be patient and wait till I'm off the phone. The word "patient" here is a / an ....
ⓐ noun ⓑ verb ⓒ adjective ⓓ adverb

633. There a lot of school projects that we want to ....
ⓐ do ⓑ have ⓒ get ⓓ make

634. The lungs take .... air and help us to breathe.
ⓐ of ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ in

635. He .... an infection of COVID-19.
ⓐ has ⓑ get ⓒ gives ⓓ stops

636. He .... an infection of COVID-19.
ⓐ have ⓑ gets ⓒ gives ⓓ stops

637. COVID-19 .... him an infection.
ⓐ have ⓑ gets ⓒ gives ⓓ stops

638. There is a medicine which .... infection.
ⓐ have ⓑ gets ⓒ gives ⓓ stops

639. The lungs take .... air and help us to breathe.
ⓐ of ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ in

640. When I saw my brother on the stage I nearly fell .... my chair.
ⓐ of ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ off

641. I found out some really interesting things .... my great grandfather.
ⓐ about ⓑ of ⓒ in ⓓ out

642. Magdy Yacoub stopped .... as a surgeon in 2001.
ⓐ work ⓑ to work ⓒ working ⓓ works

643. I stopped .... water, then I continued studying.
ⓐ drink ⓑ to drink ⓒ drinking ⓓ drinks

644. Don't worry. This disease doesn't ....
ⓐ infect ⓑ infection ⓒ infectious ⓓ effect

645. Don't worry. This disease isn't ....
ⓐ infect ⓑ infection ⓒ infectious ⓓ effect

646. Don't worry. This disease isn't an ....
ⓐ infect ⓑ infection ⓒ infectious ⓓ effect

647. They also how to mend .... bones.
ⓐ broken ⓑ broke ⓒ break ⓓ breaks

648. They also how to .... cuts.
ⓐ see ⓑ saw ⓒ sew ⓓ so

649. The snakes are ....
ⓐ scare ⓑ scar ⓒ scary ⓓ scared

650. He is .... of snakes .
ⓐ scare ⓑ scar ⓒ scary ⓓ scared

651. He is .... I am afraid of him.
ⓐ scare ⓑ scar ⓒ scary ⓓ scared

652. Parents always put their children first and .... their best for them.
ⓐ put ⓑ do ⓒ cut ⓓ tries

653. Parents always put their children first and .... their best for them.
ⓐ put ⓑ does ⓒ cut ⓓ try

654. We all will go to the party, ... you.
ⓐ including ⓑ include ⓒ includes ⓓ included

655. We all will go to the party, you ....
ⓐ including ⓑ include ⓒ includes ⓓ included

656. Ahmed is a .... boy.
ⓐ teens ⓑ teenager ⓒ teenage ⓓ teenages

657. Ahmed is a .... boy.
ⓐ teen ⓑ teenager ⓒ teener ⓓ teenages

658. Ahmed is a ....
ⓐ teens ⓑ teenager ⓒ teenage ⓓ teenages

659. Ahmed is a ....
ⓐ teen ⓑ teenagers ⓒ teenage ⓓ teenages

660. There are many .... of transport.
ⓐ men ⓑ mean ⓒ means ⓓ men's

661. The bus is a .... of transport.
ⓐ men ⓑ mean ⓒ means ⓓ men's

662. He's too .... to buy a present for his wife.
ⓐ men ⓑ mean ⓒ means ⓓ men's

663. What do you .... ?
ⓐ men ⓑ mean ⓒ means ⓓ men's



The Simple Past Tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

664. Last summer, my family .... a fantastic holiday in Morocco.
ⓐ have ⓑ had ⓒ has ⓓ are having

665. We had a great time in Cairo ....
ⓐ last a week ⓑ last week ⓒ week ago ⓓ ago a week

666. We had a great time in Cairo a ....
ⓐ last a week ⓑ last week ⓒ week ago ⓓ ago a week

667. We had a great time in Cairo ....
ⓐ last a week ⓑ week last ⓒ a week ago ⓓ ago a week

668. We had a great time in Cairo two ....
ⓐ last a week ⓑ last weeks ⓒ weeks ago ⓓ a week ago

669. We had a great time in Cairo two ....
ⓐ last a week ⓑ last weeks ⓒ weeks ago ⓓ yesterday

670. We visited a big beach and then we .... in a nice hotel
ⓐ sleep ⓑ are sleeping ⓒ sleep ⓓ slept

671. There .... camels on the beach yesterday.
ⓐ was ⓑ are ⓒ is ⓓ were

672. They................. barbecued chicken for dinner last night.
ⓐ eat ⓑ eats ⓒ ate ⓓ eating

673. Mona................. to school yesterday because she was ill.
ⓐ not come ⓑ doesn't come ⓒ don't come ⓓ didn't come

674. Nadia................. a beautiful dress yesterday.
ⓐ wore ⓑ wear ⓒ wearing ⓓ wears

675. They .... at the party last night.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ aren't ⓒ weren't ⓓ wasn't

676. She didn't................. to the beach yesterday.
ⓐ go ⓑ went ⓒ gone ⓓ goes

677. Hany .... at school last Monday.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ wasn't ⓓ hasn't

678. When I went to Alexandria. I................. in a holiday flat.
ⓐ sleeps ⓑ sleep ⓒ sleeping ⓓ slept

679. We................. an interesting film last night.
ⓐ watch ⓑ watched ⓒ watched ⓓ watches

680. My family................. delicious food last week.
ⓐ ate ⓑ eat ⓒ eats ⓓ eating

681. I .... with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.
ⓐ swim ⓑ swam ⓒ swim ⓓ swimming

682. I last played tennis two years ....
ⓐ yet ⓑ for ⓒ ago ⓓ since

683. When I went to school, I................. good at English.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ don't ⓒ can't ⓓ wasn't

684. Mr Masaoud .... in 1998.
ⓐ is bore ⓑ was born ⓒ is born ⓓ was born

685. Egypt's football team................. the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.
ⓐ win ⓑ won ⓒ to win ⓓ winning

686. In 2016, a shark................. Omar and he lost a leg.
ⓐ is attacking ⓑ attacking ⓒ attacked ⓓ attacks

687. In 1990, He .... the number one chess player in our city.
ⓐ is becoming ⓑ becomes ⓒ became ⓓ become

688. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon for a long time ....
ⓐ yesterday ⓑ last ⓒ once ⓓ ago

689. He started playing chess when he was very little and he .... always very good at it.
ⓐ does ⓑ was ⓒ has ⓓ were

690. .... you go to the museum last week?
ⓐ Are ⓑ were ⓒ Did ⓓ do

691. .... you at the museum last week?
ⓐ Are ⓑ were ⓒ Did ⓓ do

692. Last summer, my family................. a fantastic holiday in Morocco.
ⓐ have ⓑ had ⓒ has ⓓ are having

693. Salah al-Din al-Ayouby................. the citadel to protect Cairo.
ⓐ built ⓑ build ⓒ builds ⓓ building

694. Where................. you yesterday?
ⓐ did ⓑ do ⓒ are ⓓ were

695. .... your friends ready for the exam last week?
ⓐ Was ⓑ Did ⓒ Were ⓓ Do

696. .... your friends get ready for the exam last week?
ⓐ Was ⓑ Did ⓒ Were ⓓ Do

697. Where did you live when you................. a child?
ⓐ were ⓑ are ⓒ was ⓓ is





698. Mona................. to school yesterday because she was ill.
ⓐ didn't come ⓑ doesn't come ⓒ don't come ⓓ not come

699. Hany................. doing his homework an hour ago.
ⓐ starts ⓑ started ⓒ start ⓓ starting

700. He................. Aunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983.
ⓐ met ⓑ was meeting ⓒ meets ⓓ will meet

701. Hany................. at school last Monday.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ doesn't ⓒ wasn't ⓓ hasn't

702. My family................. delicious food last week.
ⓐ ate ⓑ eat ⓒ eats ⓓ eating

703. Ali always................. to work when he was young.
ⓐ was walking ⓑ walks ⓒ is walking ⓓ walked

704. He................. the letter and sent it by post.
ⓐ writes ⓑ write ⓒ wrote ⓓ is writing

705. Did you go out last night or................. you busy?
ⓐ did ⓑ were ⓒ are ⓓ have

706. Every day, I................. my uncle when he was ill.
ⓐ am visited ⓑ visit ⓒ was visited ⓓ visited

707. My cousin had an accident ....
ⓐ week ago ⓑ next week ⓒ tomorrow ⓓ last week

708. The tourists................. swimming in the sea. It was too dirty!
ⓐ don't enjoy ⓑ weren't enjoying
ⓒ didn't enjoy ⓓ doesn't enjoy

709. He................. a junior chess competition when he was only 12!
ⓐ wins ⓑ win ⓒ won ⓓ to win

710. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he .... a leg.
ⓐ is lost ⓑ to lose ⓒ loses ⓓ lost

711. My brother bought his house two years ....
ⓐ ago ⓑ last ⓒ once ⓓ since

712. My brother bought his house .... year .
ⓐ ago ⓑ last ⓒ once ⓓ since

713. My brother bought his house ....
ⓐ ago ⓑ last ⓒ once ⓓ since

714. Yasser's grandmother................. work in a hospital.
ⓐ used to ⓑ is used ⓒ uses to ⓓ using to

715. Dina................. money to a charity, but now she does.
ⓐ didn't use to give ⓑ gave ⓒ doesn't give ⓓ used to give

716. Did Hossam Hassan .... captain of the Egyptian Football team?
ⓐ uses to be ⓑ was ⓒ be ⓓ use to be

717. My grandfather .... football when he was young, but he can't walk now.
ⓐ play ⓑ used to play ⓒ use to play ⓓ plays

718. When she was a child, Yasser's Mum................. play the piano every day.
ⓐ used to ⓑ was used to ⓒ was using to ⓓ use to

719. There................. a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ didn't ⓒ didn't use to be ⓓ isn't

720. He didn't................. to arrive late.
ⓐ used ⓑ use ⓒ uses ⓓ using

721. When you were ten, ... you use to live in a different house?
ⓐ did ⓑ does ⓒ doing ⓓ do

722. What did he use to.................?
ⓐ did ⓑ does ⓒ doing ⓓ do

723. Dina................. money to a charity, but now she does.
ⓐ didn't use to give ⓑ gave ⓒ doesn't give ⓓ used to give

724. .... he use to watch TV? - Yes, he did.
ⓐ Was ⓑ Is ⓒ Does ⓓ Did

725. I................. to live in a city, but now I live in a village.
ⓐ uses ⓑ used ⓒ didn't use ⓓ using

726. I didn't................. to want to have a nice house.
ⓐ used ⓑ uses ⓒ using ⓓ use

727. .... Mr Masaoud use to teach science before he came to this school?
ⓐ Was ⓑ Is ⓒ Does ⓓ Did

728. He used to smoke, but now he ....
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ doesn't ⓓ isn't

729. He used to be lazy, but now he ....
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ doesn't ⓓ isn't

730. He didn't use to smoke , but now he ....
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ doesn't ⓓ isn't

731. He didn't use to be lazy , but now he ....
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ doesn't ⓓ isn't

732. He didn't use to be lazy , but she ....
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ wasn't ⓓ isn't

733. He used to be lazy , but she ....
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ wasn't ⓓ isn't

734. He used to smoke, but she ....
ⓐ does ⓑ did ⓒ doesn't ⓓ didn't

735. He used not to have a car but now he .... one.
ⓐ does ⓑ is ⓒ has ⓓ have

736. He used to .... clever when he was young.
ⓐ be ⓑ being ⓒ do ⓓ doing

737. He used to .... exercises when he was young.
ⓐ be ⓑ being ⓒ do ⓓ doing

738. He was used to .... exercises when he was young.
ⓐ be ⓑ being ⓒ do ⓓ doing

739. He got used to .... exercises when he was young.
ⓐ be ⓑ being ⓒ do ⓓ doing

740. He is used to .... exercises when he was young.
ⓐ be ⓑ being ⓒ do ⓓ doing

741. Sama's mother................. be a teacher, but now she works in a bank.
ⓐ is used to ⓑ use to ⓒ use ⓓ used to

742. There.............. three restaurants in this town, but two closed down leaving only one.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ is ⓓ are

743. Ahmed put the book on the shelf and the next day he .... it.
ⓐ read ⓑ reads ⓒ is reading ⓓ will read

744. At her first school, she .... very active.
ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ are ⓓ were

745. It's three days .... I last called my friend Ali.
ⓐ ago ⓑ last ⓒ since ⓓ yesterday

746. How many hours a day................. to go to school when you were ten?
ⓐ did you ⓑ did you use ⓒ you did ⓓ you did use

747. She .... a blue blouse on her first day at school.
ⓐ wore ⓑ wear ⓒ wears ⓓ wearing

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

224. The little girl .... (drop) the dishes this morning.
225. .... (Do) he happy when you came?
226. They .... (not lives) in this small flat in 2010.
227. Mohamed had English lessons at school two hours .... (last).
228. .... (Does) he win the prize when he was in the International Competition.
229. Mr Ahmed Masaoud .... (be) born in 1998.
230. Salma .... (not visited) Alexandria before. It was her first time.
231. When I was seven, I .... (stop) a man from going out.
232. Did you have lunch? - No, I .... (do)

233. Huda .... (are) at home yesterday.
234. Yesterday, the kangaroo .... (hop) in the forest.
235. They .... (are) at the club yesterday.
236. .... (Do) Mr Masaoud at Port Said in 2020?
237. Emad and Fares .... (not visiting) Alexandria in the past.
238. .... (Does) you get a new car? Yes, I did.
239. My friend..................... (eat) fish last week.
240. Who did you..................... (seeing) last Monday?
241. She didn't..................... (rode) a camel before.
242. We..................... (write) in English yesterday.
243. My uncle..................... (buy) his house last summer.
244. Hany..................... (don't) play tennis yesterday.
245. Hala..................... (be) ill last week.
246. I..................... (sleep) in a tent last night
247. We..................... (go) into the cave last holiday.
248. Before Yasser's dad got married, he.................. (doesn't) use to live in Cairo
249. Where did you..................... (went) on holiday last summer
250. What .... (do) you visit last week?
251. How..................... (did) your day yesterday?
252. He swam in the sea, but he didn't..................... (saw) any dolphins.
253. How did you..................... (used) to go to school?
254. .... (Do) you use to have a lot of homework?
255. Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather.......... (not)use to know how to drive a car.
256. I used .... (drives) a car when I was young.
257. I got used .... (drives) a car when I was young.
258. I was used .... (drives) a car when I was young.
259. I was used to do karate but now I .... (be).
260. What was your favourite toy when you..................... (be) little?
261. In 1990, he..................... (become)the number one chess player in our city.
262. I didn't..................... (used) to like salad when I was younger.
263. We used to..................... (playing) football.

264. My Uncle Rashid..................... (be) born in 1961.
265. I..................... (not use) to like fish when I was young.
266. Did you visit the Pyramids when you..................... (be) young?
267. Pele..................... (use) to play football in Brazil.
268. We didn't..................... (used) swim in the river.
269. My mother used to.......... (cooking) for me, but now my wife cooks at home.
270. What did you do..................... (next) weekend?
271. Yesterday, Gamal..................... (arrives) at the airport at half past ten.
272. Before he got married, Yasser's dad didn't..................... (used) to live in Cairo.
273. He..................... (visits) his grandparents every weekend when he was young.
274. My father used to play tennis, but now he..................... (did).
275. My father used to be at home, but now he..................... (did).
276. There .... (be) an exciting match on TV yesterday.
277. Nour went to the library and she .... (borrow) some books.
278. Why .... (do) you go to school yesterday? - Because I was ill.

UNIT 4 INTO THE PAST



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

748. Alexandria is a .... city.
ⓐ history ⓑ historical ⓒ historian ⓓ historic

749. I will build a .... model about Alexandria.
ⓐ history ⓑ historical ⓒ historian ⓓ historic

750. I read a.......................... book about Mohamed Ali.
ⓐ history ⓑ historical ⓒ historian ⓓ historic

751. I know about the past in ....
ⓐ history ⓑ historical ⓒ historian ⓓ historic

752. I know about the past form a ....
ⓐ history ⓑ historical ⓒ historian ⓓ historic

753. My uncle is a .... He is interested in the history of Egypt.
ⓐ history ⓑ historical ⓒ historian ⓓ historic

754. We walked under a big................before we entered the museum.
ⓐ arch ⓑ statue ⓒ castle ⓓ mosque

755. This building became .... after an earthquake.
ⓐ statues ⓑ ruins ⓒ castles ⓓ mosques

756. There are more than 2,000................ in the museum.
ⓐ subjects ⓑ projects ⓒ parts ⓓ objects

757. Heba is not interested................ playing tennis.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ to

758. We are proud of our................ handball team. They won the cup.
ⓐ world ⓑ modern ⓒ ancient ⓓ national

759. In the past, people built................ to watch their favourite sports.
ⓐ museums ⓑ mosques ⓒ stadiums ⓓ theatres

760. We bought a new house with a large................ .
ⓐ entrance ⓑ wall ⓒ ruin ⓓ castle

761. Children must learn how to................ politely all the time.
ⓐ treat ⓑ behave ⓒ do ⓓ make

762. When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful................ .
ⓐ location ⓑ sight ⓒ view ⓓ review

763. They didn't complete this building at all. These................ are thousands of years old.
ⓐ ruins ⓑ arches ⓒ entrances ⓓ castles

764. This old castle................ to the Romans times.
ⓐ gets ⓑ dates ⓒ goes ⓓ jumps

765. When you travel to a historic place, you should................ a guide.
ⓐ make ⓑ get ⓒ teach ⓓ buy

766. Many people are interested................ watching football matches.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ on ⓓ onto

767. Students usually bring................ lunch with them on a trip.
ⓐ bucket ⓑ packet ⓒ baked ⓓ packed

768. This book is very interesting. I................ it to you.
ⓐ recommend ⓑ advise ⓒ tell ⓓ say

769. The trip was................ It was amazing.
ⓐ scary ⓑ pleased ⓒ awesome ⓓ boring

770. We call something is................ when it is very old.
ⓐ new ⓑ modern ⓒ patient ⓓ ancient

771. People build................ to pray in.
ⓐ statues ⓑ ruins ⓒ castles ⓓ mosques

772. The museum is full of................ and many other historic objects.
ⓐ theatres ⓑ statues ⓒ stadiums ⓓ castles

773. Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of................ from the Nile.
ⓐ metal ⓑ wool ⓒ clay ⓓ water

774. Ancient Egyptians used................ for writing.
ⓐ papyrus ⓑ wood ⓒ wool ⓓ paper

775. A................ is a piece of metal used as money.
ⓐ pot ⓑ bowl ⓒ can ⓓ coin

776. Some boys wore................ on their faces to frighten girls.
ⓐ shorts ⓑ skirts ⓒ masks ⓓ shirts

777. My grandmother gave me a beautiful......on my birthday which I can wear around my neck.
ⓐ ring ⓑ watch ⓒ jumper ⓓ necklace

778. My mother wears two................ on her fingers. They are expensive.
ⓐ rings ⓑ watches ⓒ scarfs ⓓ necklaces

779. Bees and ants are small ....
ⓐ animals ⓑ birds ⓒ insects ⓓ turtles

780. People wear sunglasses to................ their eyes from the sun.
ⓐ affect ⓑ protect ⓒ infect ⓓ give

781. My father's mobile phone .... him a lot of money. It's very expensive.
ⓐ cost ⓑ paid ⓒ bought ⓓ sold



782. There is a................ of flowers on the table next to my bed.
ⓐ bottle ⓑ vase ⓒ bag ⓓ glass

783. The shop is very crowded today. There are many................ .
ⓐ waiters ⓑ customers ⓒ sellers ⓓ objects

784. We go to school every day................ holidays.
ⓐ accept ⓑ expect ⓒ except ⓓ aspect

785. There was a................ in our class about how we help the environment.
ⓐ debate ⓑ date ⓒ carpet ⓓ lamp

786. .... is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.
ⓐ Infection ⓑ illness ⓒ Pollution ⓓ Tourism

787. We should protect our................ places because they are very important.
ⓐ history ⓑ historian ⓒ geography ⓓ historic

788. Some tourists are careless because they............. rubbish in historic places.
ⓐ drop ⓑ make ⓒ lend ⓓ mix

789. Some projects in the area help................ people to find jobs easily.
ⓐ strange ⓑ local ⓒ historic ⓓ natural

790. Some people think that tourists can................ important places.
ⓐ attack ⓑ attract ⓒ damage ⓓ debate

791. A................ is a period of 100 years.
ⓐ month ⓑ week ⓒ decade ⓓ century

792. A................ is a period of 10 years.
ⓐ month ⓑ week ⓒ decade ⓓ century

793. A................ is a period of 7 days.
ⓐ month ⓑ week ⓒ decade ⓓ century

794. A................ is a period of nearly 30 days.
ⓐ month ⓑ week ⓒ decade ⓓ century

795. I want to know what happened................ Hazem last night.
ⓐ to ⓑ in ⓒ under ⓓ at

796. My brother works in a big. that organises holidays.
ⓐ fort ⓑ castle ⓒ palace ⓓ company

797. Muhammad Ali was the.......... of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.
ⓐ ruler ⓑ roller ⓒ baker ⓓ waiter

798. This chemical helps to keep................ mosquitos.
ⓐ away ⓑ by ⓒ for ⓓ in

799. A................ is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair thing.
ⓐ vase ⓑ tap ⓒ tool ⓓ pot

800. A................ is a model of a person.
ⓐ figure ⓑ tap ⓒ coin ⓓ pot



801. Popole used bowls to................ ingredients.

ⓐ repair ⓑ mix ⓒ do ⓓ paint

802. .... are damaging many countries around the world.

ⓐ Wars ⓑ Weddings ⓒ Birthdays ⓓ Parties

803. There are .... schools for deaf people who cannot hear.

ⓐ special ⓑ tourist ⓒ crowded ⓓ ugly

804. Tourism is good................ our country

ⓐ at ⓑ with ⓒ for ⓓ to

805. Tourism is good .... helping our country.

ⓐ at ⓑ with ⓒ for ⓓ to

806. I read an interesting................ about tourism in a magazine.

ⓐ debate ⓑ report ⓒ paper ⓓ plan

807. You can see many....................in the museum.

ⓐ castles ⓑ prayers ⓒ statues ⓓ arches

808. From the top of the Cairo tower, I enjoyed the beautiful.......... of the city.

ⓐ location ⓑ sight ⓒ view ⓓ review

809. Can you................ a good hotel near here?

ⓐ recommend ⓑ advise ⓒ tell ⓓ suggests

810. Can you................ a good hotel near here?

ⓐ recommends ⓑ advise ⓒ tell ⓓ suggest

811. My mother uses healthy................ when she cooks our food.

ⓐ lists ⓑ subjects ⓒ ingredients ⓓ pans

812. Petra in Jordon................ to around 300 BCE.

ⓐ arrives ⓑ takes ⓒ moves ⓓ dates

813. Can you tell me the................ of the ticket , please?

ⓐ culture ⓑ vase ⓒ price ⓓ figure

814. A / an .... has four corners.

ⓐ arch ⓑ bowl ⓒ circle ⓓ square

815. A / an .... has a curved shape (half circle).

ⓐ arch ⓑ bowl ⓒ circle ⓓ square

816. It's a good idea to get a................ to tell you all about the history.

ⓐ guide ⓑ tourist ⓒ thief ⓓ officer

817. Ali's uncle works for a big oil................ in the United Arab Emirates.

ⓐ work ⓑ company ⓒ environment ⓓ job

818. Don't play football here or you might .... that car.

ⓐ hurt ⓑ injure ⓒ repair ⓓ damage

819. You have to buy a pen for me so that I .... write my lessons.
ⓐ can ⓑ would ⓒ could ⓓ ought

820. You had to buy a pen for me so that I .... write my lessons.
ⓐ can ⓑ will ⓒ could ⓓ ought

821. It is amazing to take a day .... your home in the parks.
ⓐ of ⓑ off ⓒ out ⓓ about

822. I am very sick. I want a day ....
ⓐ of ⓑ off ⓒ out ⓓ about

823. It's an entrance .... the museum.
ⓐ to ⓑ for ⓒ on ⓓ with

824. I can see my house .... the top of his house.
ⓐ at ⓑ form ⓒ on ⓓ with

825. He sits .... the top of his house.
ⓐ at ⓑ form ⓒ on ⓓ with

826. It's important .... plan the trip properly.
ⓐ to plan ⓑ plans ⓒ plan ⓓ planned

827. It's important for him .... plan the trip properly.
ⓐ to plan ⓑ plans ⓒ plan ⓓ planned

828. It's important he...................... plan the trip properly.
ⓐ to plan ⓑ plans ⓒ plan ⓓ planned

829. It's important that he .... plan the trip properly.
ⓐ to plan ⓑ plans ⓒ plan ⓓ planned

830. It's important that we .... plan the trip properly.
ⓐ to plan ⓑ plans ⓒ plan ⓓ planned

831. You can leave .... away.
ⓐ street ⓑ straight ⓒ strait ⓓ start

832. It's a long way .... Giza from the school.
ⓐ to ⓑ from ⓒ by ⓓ on

833. You're going to be way .... the day.
ⓐ many ⓑ whole ⓒ all ⓓ both

834. You're going to be way the .... day.
ⓐ many ⓑ whole ⓒ all ⓓ both

835. There are a lot of books on the shelf ....
ⓐ read ⓑ reads ⓒ to read ⓓ reading

836. He has much food ....
ⓐ to eat ⓑ eat ⓒ eats ⓓ eating

837. It's a good idea .... a guide to tell you all about the history.
ⓐ gets ⓑ to get ⓒ got ⓓ getting

838. This knife is used .... vegetables.
ⓐ cut ⓑ to cut ⓒ for cut ⓓ cutting

839. This knife is used .... vegetables.
ⓐ cut ⓑ to cuts ⓒ for cutting ⓓ cutting

840. This knife is used for .... vegetables.
ⓐ cut ⓑ to cut ⓒ for cut ⓓ cutting

841. I went to the Museum of .... Art.
ⓐ Islam ⓑ Islamic ⓒ Islams ⓓ Muslim

842. I went to the Museum of .... Art.
ⓐ Islam ⓑ Islamic ⓒ Islams ⓓ Muslim

843. Fareeda decided .... the poor people in her village.
ⓐ help ⓑ to helping ⓒ to help ⓓ helped

844. Fareeda decided .... the poor people in her village.
ⓐ help ⓑ on helping ⓒ to helps ⓓ helped

845. Fareeda decided .... she would help the poor people in her village.
ⓐ to ⓑ on ⓒ for ⓓ that

846. Fareeda decided .... she wanted to do.
ⓐ what ⓑ on ⓒ for ⓓ that

847. It's easy to imagine in .... Romans times like there.
ⓐ life what was ⓑ what life was ⓒ what was life ⓓ what life

848. This pen is broken. I'll buy .... one.
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

849. This pen is broken. I'll buy the .... one.
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

850. These pens are broken. I'll buy .... ones.
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

851. Can you give me .... ten pounds?
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

852. Can you give me .... pounds?
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

853. Keep .... ideas for you.
ⓐ an other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

854. Keep this idea for .... time.
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other

855. We should help each ....
ⓐ other ⓑ others ⓒ another ⓓ the other



856. This stadium is for Roman horse ....
ⓐ races ⓑ faces ⓒ basis ⓓ temples

857. Take this medicine to protect yourself .... COVID-19.
ⓐ of ⓑ form ⓒ up ⓓ on

858. Take this medicine to protect yourself .... COVID-19.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ up ⓓ against

859. I recommend .... to Petra.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ a visit to

860. I recommend .... to Petra.
ⓐ visit ⓑ to visit ⓒ to visiting ⓓ a visit

861. It dates to more than .... years old.
ⓐ ten thousands ⓑ tens thousands ⓒ ten thousand ⓓ thousand

862. It dates to more than .... years old.
ⓐ ten thousands ⓑ tens thousands ⓒ tens thousand ⓓ thousands

863. The ship nearly .... in a storm.
ⓐ sank ⓑ drowned ⓒ think ⓓ drew

864. The man nearly .... in a storm.
ⓐ sank ⓑ drowned ⓒ think ⓓ drew

865. Tourism is important for Egypt because it .... a lot of money and jobs.
ⓐ brings ⓑ sinks ⓒ drowns ⓓ draws

866. You have to behave ....
ⓐ good ⓑ better ⓒ well ⓓ will

867. Mr Masaoud allows us .... him at any time.
ⓐ to call ⓑ call ⓒ calling ⓓ calls

868. Mr Masaoud lets us .... him at any time.
ⓐ to call ⓑ call ⓒ calling ⓓ calls

869. Mr Masaoud allows .... him at any time.
ⓐ to call ⓑ call ⓒ calling ⓓ calls

870. I <u>see</u> what you mean. The word "<u>see</u>" means ....
ⓐ meet ⓑ understand ⓒ look ⓓ think

871. I will <u>see</u> my friends soon. The word "<u>see</u>" means ....
ⓐ meet ⓑ understand ⓒ look ⓓ think

872. The bridge .... the Nile's Warraq Island.
ⓐ crosses ⓑ cross ⓒ across ⓓ a cross

873. It's the best time to walk .... the bridge.
ⓐ crosses ⓑ cross ⓒ across ⓓ a cross

874. It's the best time to .... the bridge.
ⓐ crosses ⓑ cross ⓒ across ⓓ a cross

875. Cleopatra's Needle is more than 20 meters ....

ⓐ tall ⓑ long ⓒ height ⓓ length

876. Cleopatra's Needle is more than 20 meters ....

ⓐ high ⓑ long ⓒ height ⓓ length

877. Cleopatra's Needle is more than 20 meters in ....

ⓐ tall ⓑ long ⓒ height ⓓ length

878. Cleopatra's Needle .... about 200,000 kilograms.

ⓐ weighs ⓑ thinks ⓒ considers ⓓ believes

879. The British .... made many festivals.

ⓐ has ⓑ have ⓒ to have ⓓ to has

880. The disabled .... our help.

ⓐ need ⓑ needs ⓒ to need ⓓ a need

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

Must & Mustn't

NECESSITY AND OBLIGATION

الالزام والضرورة

881. You .... look right and left before you cross the road

ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ must

882. You..................... drink water from the river. It's not clean.

ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ have to ⓒ has to ⓓ mustn't

883. You..................... turn the music up too loud; you will harm our ears.

ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ have to ⓒ has to ⓓ mustn't

884. You..................... do the housework. Our mother is ill.

ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ have

885. This was a nice evening. We must .... again.

ⓐ meet ⓑ meeting ⓒ met ⓓ to meet

886. You.............. brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth

ⓐ have to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

887. You..................... forget to do your homework regularly.

ⓐ must to ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't to ⓓ mustn't

888. You..................... be kind to your friends.

ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ must never ⓓ shouldn't

889. You..................... touch any of the old buildings.

ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ must to ⓓ should

890. You..................... not touch any of the old buildings.

ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ must to ⓓ should

891. It's late. You.................... never make so much noise.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ don't

892. It's late. You.................... make so much noise.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ should ⓓ do

893. At school, you .... listen to your teacher.
ⓐ have ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ has to

894. You .... be home on time. Don't be late.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ must

895. This is a valuable book. You .... keep it and mustn't lose it.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ haven't

896. You .... smoke in petrol stations. It is very dangerous.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ must

897. We don't have much time for the train. We.................... hurry.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ should to ⓓ need

898. It's .... to come early.
ⓐ a must ⓑ must ⓒ should ⓓ has

899. You .... follow the school rules when you were at school.
ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ has to ⓓ had to

The Continuous Past Tense
زمن الماضي المستمر

900. The telephone rang while Tamer .... doing his homework.
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ were ⓓ are

901. Sanaa heard the noise.................... she was watching a film.
ⓐ if ⓑ as ⓒ so ⓓ because

902. We were playing tennis when Tamer.................... his ankle.
ⓐ hurting ⓑ hurt ⓒ was hurting ⓓ is hurting

903. Someone opened the door while I ....
ⓐ was sleeping ⓑ was slept ⓒ sleeping ⓓ slept

904. While I was looking out of the window, it .... to rain.
ⓐ started ⓑ was started ⓒ was starting ⓓ starting

905. As I.................... for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.
ⓐ practise ⓑ practising ⓒ was practising ⓓ practised

906. While I.................... for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.
ⓐ practise ⓑ practising ⓒ was practising ⓓ practised

907. While .... for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.
ⓐ practise ⓑ practising ⓒ was practising ⓓ practised

908. When I was younger, I.................... pizza almost every day.
ⓐ eaten ⓑ eat ⓒ ate ⓓ was eating

909. The boys didn't play because it.................... .
ⓐ rained ⓑ was raining ⓒ rains ⓓ is raining

910. The boys didn't play since it.................... .
ⓐ rained ⓑ was raining ⓒ rains ⓓ is raining

911. The boys couldn't play because it.................... .
ⓐ rained ⓑ was raining ⓒ rains ⓓ is raining

912. The boys can't play because it.................... .
ⓐ rained ⓑ was raining ⓒ rains ⓓ is raining

913. What .... at 10 pm last night?
ⓐ were they doing ⓑ did they do
ⓒ did they use to do ⓓ are they doing

914. Yesterday, I.................... a play at 10 o'clock.
ⓐ have watched ⓑ was watching ⓒ was watched ⓓ watched

915. I was studying my lessons when the lights.................... out.
ⓐ goes ⓑ went ⓒ were going ⓓ gone

916. I.................... my lunch when the phone rang.
ⓐ have eaten ⓑ was eating ⓒ has eaten ⓓ ate

917. Last year, we.................... to the beautiful city of Venice in Italy.
ⓐ were travelling ⓑ travel ⓒ travelled ⓓ travels

918. It started to rain while they .... home.
ⓐ walking ⓑ were walking ⓒ walked ⓓ walk

919. My father was watching TV when the phone.................... .
ⓐ ring ⓑ rung ⓒ was ringing ⓓ rang

920. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners........... through the park.
ⓐ run ⓑ was running ⓒ were running ⓓ ran

921. As Karim was taking photos of the animals, he.................... his phone.
ⓐ lost ⓑ was losing ⓒ loses ⓓ losing

922. While Mona.................... tennis, she hurt her arm.
ⓐ plays ⓑ were playing ⓒ was playing ⓓ played

923. I was doing my homework when my sister.................... me.
ⓐ was calling ⓑ calls ⓒ called ⓓ calling

924. Lots of birds .... in the sky When we sat down on the beach.
ⓐ was flying ⓑ flew ⓒ were flying ⓓ fly

925. The news.................... very bad two weeks ago.
ⓐ is ⓑ are ⓒ were ⓓ was

926. While he.................... , a shark attacked him.
ⓐ swim ⓑ was swimming ⓒ swimming ⓓ swam



927. I didn't answer the phone because I ....
ⓐ was praying ⓑ had prayed ⓒ have prayed ⓓ prayed

928. I couldn't answer the phone since I ....
ⓐ was praying ⓑ had prayed ⓒ have prayed ⓓ prayed

929. While.................... Egypt, tourists enjoy sightseeing.
ⓐ visiting ⓑ was visiting ⓒ was visited ⓓ visited

930. .... visiting Egypt, tourists enjoy sightseeing.
ⓐ While ⓑ As ⓒ During ⓓ Just

931. .... a visit Egypt, tourists enjoy sightseeing.
ⓐ When ⓑ As ⓒ During ⓓ Just

932. While we.................... home, Abbas phoned me.
ⓐ were travelling ⓑ travelling ⓒ travelled ⓓ travel

933. .... I was reading my book, the phone rang .
ⓐ When ⓑ As ⓒ After ⓓ Before

934. Most of the people were sleeping.................... the earthquake started.
ⓐ because ⓑ as ⓒ while ⓓ when

935. We....................around the museum when Samir found some tall doors.
ⓐ were looking ⓑ are looking ⓒ was looking ⓓ looked

936. While we .... at the museum, Samir found some tall doors.
ⓐ were being ⓑ was ⓒ was being ⓓ were

937. .... hearing the bad news, we cried.
ⓐ While ⓑ During ⓒ Just as ⓓ On

938. .... hearing the bad news, we cried.
ⓐ While ⓑ During ⓒ Just as ⓓ When

939. While we were going at the museum, Samir .... some tall doors.
ⓐ find ⓑ found ⓒ was finding ⓓ finds

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

NECESSITY AND OBLIGATION
Must & Mustn't
الالزام والضرورة

279. You.................. (mustn't)study hard if you want to pass your exams.

280. It's a No parking area. You.................. (must) park here.

281. You mustn't.................. (using) a mobile phone in class.

282. You mustn't.................. (to forget) your bag and books.

283. Students and teachers must.................. (are) polite to each other.

284. We must.................. (to go) to the laboratory for our science lessons.
285. You.................. (must to) touch the stones of the Pyramids.
286. People.................. (must) throw rubbish in the street.
287. During an exam, you.................. (must) copy from the other students.
288. I.................. (must) forget my wife's birthday, so I have to buy a card today.
289. If you want to be healthy, you must .... (does) sports.
290. There is a "No Smoking " sign. We................ (must) smoke here.
291. Must you wash the dishes?   No, I .... (do).
292. You .... (must) park your car here. It's against the law.
293. Mustn't she .... (goes) to school on Saturday?
294. You .... (have) enter the place without a permission. You are banned.
295. You .... (mustn't) park your car here. It's for the law.



296. Mona was singing when I .... (phone) her.
297. While .... (watch) the match, Amira felt down.
298. While they .... (not eat) , Nada was talking to them.
299. I couldn't come to the party because I .... (is) sleeping.
300. Just as Omar .... (reads) the book, his mother called him.
301. While Mr Masaoud .... (explain) the lesson, his friend arrived.
302. They .... (am) playing cards at five yesterday.
303. Was she .... (do) her homework yesterday?
304. Were we going to uncle Osama?   No, we .... (is).
305. Huda was .... (leave not) when he found the key on the floor.
306. They .... (have) tea when the doorbell rang.
307. When he.................. (arrive), we were having dinner.
308. While I.................. (sweep) the floor , I heard a noise.
309. While I.................. (be) home , I heard a noise.
310. They.................. (forget) their books yesterday.
311. I was doing my homework when my sister.................. (call) me.



312. At four p.m. yesterday, I.................. (do) my homework.
313. I was walking through the park when I.................. (meet) Adel.
314. While I was texting my friends, the school bus.................. (arrive).
315. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners....... (run)through the park
316. While Mona.................. (play)tennis, she hurt her arm.
317. What.................. (be) you doing when your father came?
318. Was it.................. (rain) when you left school?
319. My sister.................. (clean up) the room while I was making tea.
320. Amir .... (study) all night yesterday.
321. This morning, I.................. (go) to the town centre with my mum.
322. As Mr Badr was walking to work, he.................. (see) an old friend.
323. At five yesterday, I .... (see) an old friend at Nile Café.
324. Yesterday, I .... (see) an old friend at Nile Café.
325. Huda's grandparents arrived while she.................. (put) her clothes away.
326. .... (While) the match, Hossam was crying a lot.
327. I couldn't come to the party .... (while) I was sleeping.
328. It .... (rain) all the day, so we decided to stay at home.
329. .... (During) at school, we took some pictures.
330. As I .... (give) my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.
331. The phone .... (breaks)! My friend felt very sad.
332. My friend felt very sad and I .... (be) sad as well.
333. I ...... (show) my friends my new phone while we were walking down the road.
334. This morning, I .... (go) to the town centre with my mum.
335. .... (Be) the computer plugged in ? - Yes, it was.
336. I didn't hear the doorbell since I .... (have) a shower.
337. Hazim........................(be) in France a week ago.
338. While I.......................(charge) the battery, my phone rang.
339. As we .... (walk) into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.
340. As I .... (watch) TV, the light went out.
341. Yesterday evening, we .... (study)for our English test when all the lights went out.
342. I was walking through the park when I .... (meet)Adel.
343. At four p.m. yesterday, I........................ (did)my homework.
344. I was sweeping the floor .... (while) I heard a noise.
345. While .... (study), he fell asleep.
346. My children .... (play) together all day yesterday as they were free.







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

940. They gave the footballer a .... test to check his health.
ⓐ leveling ⓑ random ⓒ simple ⓓ difficult

941. We all remember my grandfather's ...., he always helped us when we were children.
ⓐ cruelty ⓑ advice ⓒ kindness ⓓ ugliness

942. This book is......................, you should read it.
ⓐ boring ⓑ bad ⓒ useless ⓓ fantastic

943. Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was surprised when a.................... walked into his shop.
ⓐ neighbour ⓑ relative ⓒ stranger ⓓ friend

944. I'm very................. today because I found a good job and met my old best friend.
ⓐ messy ⓑ lazy ⓒ tidy ⓓ lucky

945. Students....................... turns to answer questions.
ⓐ plan ⓑ do ⓒ make ⓓ take

946. My sister likes helping mum to....................... the cooking.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ have ⓓ pay

947. He lives on the 17th floor. He always takes the....................... .
ⓐ steps ⓑ ladder ⓒ lift ⓓ plane

948. I usually....................... my baby sister when my parents are away.
ⓐ look after ⓑ wash up ⓒ tidy up ⓓ look up

949. You should....................... your things after using them.
ⓐ take out ⓑ look after ⓒ put away ⓓ give up

950. My mother always takes out the rubbish when the bin is....................... .
ⓐ full ⓑ empty ⓒ lazy ⓓ tidy

951. I bought a lovely....................... for my mother to put her money in.
ⓐ ring ⓑ scarf ⓒ necklace ⓓ purse

952. You should be kind....................... strangers .
ⓐ at ⓑ to ⓒ for ⓓ with

953. It's friendly to meet people with a....................... .
ⓐ smile ⓑ sadness ⓒ damage ⓓ cry

954. Our children don't often talk to....................... .
ⓐ runners ⓑ waiters ⓒ strangers ⓓ designers

955. To be good at English, you should...................... it.
ⓐ recommend ⓑ practise ⓒ tell ⓓ play

956. I recommend you watch that film. It's...................... .
ⓐ amazed ⓑ ugly ⓒ fantastic ⓓ boring

957. When you are on a bus, you should................ your seat to older people.
ⓐ take ⓑ give ⓒ touch ⓓ sell

958. Our apartment is...................... the fifth floor.
ⓐ in ⓑ from ⓒ on ⓓ between

959. These are the...................... you should follow to be fit.
ⓐ tubes ⓑ tips ⓒ lips ⓓ taps

960. Everyone wants to make the world...................... for them.
ⓐ bad ⓑ worse ⓒ better ⓓ worst

961. People who can't walk, usually have a/an...................... to help them.
ⓐ armchair ⓑ seat ⓒ sofa ⓓ wheelchair

962. You show.......... when you do things to help others and show you care about them.
ⓐ kindness ⓑ sadness ⓒ carelessness ⓓ laziness

963. The................. goes to prison for taking things that don't belong to him.
ⓐ police ⓑ thief ⓒ volunteer ⓓ charity

964. Players should wear the best................ when they play to help them run.
ⓐ glasses ⓑ trainers ⓒ jeans ⓓ jackets

965. I saw a .... man who cannot walk and uses a wheelchair.
ⓐ messy ⓑ generous ⓒ clever ⓓ disabled

966. The rich help poor people a lot when they...................... money to charities.
ⓐ sell ⓑ borrow ⓒ donate ⓓ lose

967. A................ school is a school where students study and live all the time.
ⓐ boarding ⓑ board ⓒ broad ⓓ abroad

968. Children like to go to the zoo and...................... animals there.
ⓐ drive ⓑ play ⓒ feed ⓓ eat

969. A...................... is the daughter of the king or queen.
ⓐ prince ⓑ princess ⓒ servant ⓓ ruler

970. Be careful! You're a small boy. You can't.............. this heavy bag alone.
ⓐ stop ⓑ leave ⓒ lift ⓓ left

971. The .... means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.
ⓐ community ⓑ distance ⓒ country ⓓ village

972. We shouldn't be...................... to animals.
ⓐ kind ⓑ polite ⓒ tidy ⓓ cruel

973. Nowadays there are many.............. in most streets who ask for money.
ⓐ servants ⓑ beggars ⓒ sellers ⓓ actors

974. My grandfather always gives us money and presents. He is ....
ⓐ lucky ⓑ tidy ⓒ clever ⓓ generous

975. A....................... is a person who works in houses.
ⓐ servant ⓑ headteacher ⓒ beggar ⓓ princess

976. A kind person is someone who....................... well.
ⓐ sleeps ⓑ plays ⓒ behaves ⓓ travels

977. I usually....................... school on time.
ⓐ arrive ⓑ get ⓒ go ⓓ reach

978. The baker looked....................... when Sara gave all cakes to the beggar.
ⓐ surprise ⓑ surprising ⓒ surprised ⓓ surprises

979. .... always ask people for money .
ⓐ Tourists ⓑ Bakers ⓒ Masters ⓓ Beggars

980. My mother is an excellent cook. She cooks .... food.
ⓐ generous ⓑ disabled ⓒ delicious ⓓ terrible

981. My mother isn't an excellent cook. She cooks .... food.
ⓐ generous ⓑ disabled ⓒ delicious ⓓ terrible

982. My mother is an excellent cook. She cooks .... food.
ⓐ generous ⓑ disabled ⓒ terrific ⓓ terrible

983. .... is to give something useful to a person or charity that needs help.
ⓐ borrow ⓑ donate ⓒ lift ⓓ steal

984. My aunt is a....................... . She has a big company.
ⓐ teacher ⓑ baker ⓒ businesswoman ⓓ secretary

985. A....................... is the person who fights fires.
ⓐ Pilot ⓑ sailor ⓒ writer ⓓ firefighter

986. You should show your....................... before leaving a country.
ⓐ report ⓑ blog ⓒ passport ⓓ photo

987. A....................... is the person who works at airports.
ⓐ pilot ⓑ sailor ⓒ writer ⓓ firefighter

988. We should put rubbish in....................... .
ⓐ pots ⓑ bins ⓒ bowls ⓓ bottles

989. A....................... is something that women use to put their money in.
ⓐ suitcase ⓑ basket ⓒ purse ⓓ tool

990. A....................... is the person who works on a boat.
ⓐ teacher ⓑ sailor ⓒ doctor ⓓ pilot

991. A...... is something that takes you to the top of a building, without using the stairs.
ⓐ roof ⓑ wall ⓒ ladder ⓓ lift

992. Teenagers shouldn't spend too much time on....................... media.
ⓐ society ⓑ community ⓒ sociable ⓓ social

993. My little brother likes catching fish. He wants to be a ....
ⓐ nurse ⓑ fisherman ⓒ waiter ⓓ firefighter

994. This is the .... that my family donates money to.
ⓐ school ⓑ market ⓒ shop ⓓ charity

995. We've got science in the ....
ⓐ cinema ⓑ restaurant ⓒ cafe ⓓ laboratory

996. This charity has got a lot of .... from rich people.
ⓐ development ⓑ equipment ⓒ donation ⓓ pollution

997. How much time did you spend .... this project?
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ of ⓓ on

998. My mother always...................... the toys among my little brothers.
ⓐ puts ⓑ tidies ⓒ washes ⓓ shares

999. My little brother gave...................... his toys to a charity.
ⓐ away ⓑ up ⓒ into ⓓ back

1000. Fareeda Rashwan has ....two million pounds to charities in the city.
ⓐ made ⓑ decided ⓒ donated ⓓ explained

1001.Our class...................... to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.
ⓐ decided ⓑ broke ⓒ gave ⓓ completed

1002. In my opinion,...................... random acts of kindness is fantastic.
ⓐ taking ⓑ making ⓒ doing ⓓ having

1003. In my opinion,...................... random acts of kindness is fantastic.
ⓐ taking ⓑ making ⓒ practising ⓓ having

1004. Someone should run after Karim and give him the bag...................... .
ⓐ in ⓑ out ⓒ back ⓓ up

1005. The police ran...................... the thief when they saw him leave the Bank.
ⓐ above ⓑ under ⓒ before ⓓ after

1006. Random means happening without a ....
ⓐ think ⓑ lift ⓒ plan ⓓ tidy

1007. I have to .... my bed.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ have ⓓ run

1008. I have to .... my bedroom.
ⓐ do ⓑ makes ⓒ have ⓓ tidy

1009. I took five days .... my house.
ⓐ paint ⓑ to painted ⓒ to paint ⓓ painting

1010. My mother always .... the rubbish when the bin is full .
ⓐ makes out ⓑ takes out ⓒ takes in ⓓ makes in

1011. My flat is .... the third floor.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ by

1012. He has to .... his bag ready.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ get ⓓ have

1013. I .... turns to wash up after meals.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ have ⓓ take

1014. Yassin and his sister will .... shopping next week.
ⓐ go ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ take

1015. Yassin and his sister will .... the shopping next week.
ⓐ go ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ take

1016. Yassin and his sister will .... the cooking next hour.
ⓐ go ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ take

1017. Yassin and his sister will .... cooking next hour.
ⓐ go ⓑ do ⓒ have ⓓ take

1018. Yassin and his sister .... shopping last week.
ⓐ went ⓑ did ⓒ had ⓓ took

1019. He was here .... reason.
ⓐ for no ⓑ to no ⓒ for any ⓓ to any

1020. He wasn't here .... reason.
ⓐ for no ⓑ to no ⓒ for any ⓓ to any

1021. You should start running for .... distances.
ⓐ long ⓑ short ⓒ high ⓓ low

1022. You shouldn't start running for .... distances.
ⓐ long ⓑ short ⓒ high ⓓ low

1023. Don't run too far, but go .... each day.
ⓐ farther ⓑ a bit further ⓒ further ⓓ far

1024. I took my watch .... when I was playing and it fell.
ⓐ on ⓑ of ⓒ off ⓓ for

1025. I work .... a teacher.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ as

1026. I work .... education.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ as

1027. I work .... school.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ as

1028. I work .... students.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ with

1029. I work .... volunteer.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ as

1030. I work .... a charity.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ as

1031. She .... like a princess.
ⓐ behave ⓑ acts ⓒ does ⓓ makes

1032. She .... like a princess.
ⓐ behaves ⓑ act ⓒ does ⓓ makes

1033. He is .... to speak French. He can't speak French.
ⓐ disable ⓑ disabled ⓒ unable ⓓ able

1034. She is cruel .... Sara.
ⓐ to ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ on

1035. I went out without ....
ⓐ ask ⓑ asked ⓒ asking ⓓ asks

1036. He .... many decisions last week.
ⓐ take ⓑ made ⓒ did ⓓ saw

1037. He .... many decisions last week.
ⓐ took ⓑ make ⓒ did ⓓ saw

1038. Mr Masaoud allowed Ali .... his mobile.
ⓐ to use ⓑ use ⓒ uses ⓓ using

1039. Mr Masaoud let Ali .... his mobile.
ⓐ to use ⓑ use ⓒ uses ⓓ using

1040. Mr Masaoud allowed .... his mobile.
ⓐ to use ⓑ use ⓒ uses ⓓ using

1041. Ali was allowed .... his mobile.
ⓐ to use ⓑ use ⓒ uses ⓓ using

Grammar
القواعد اللغوية

Have to & Has to
NECESSITY AND OBLIGATION
الإلزام والضرورة

1042. My father .... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work .
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ has to

1043. When you get on the bus, you...................... buy a ticket.
ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ has to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ have to

1044. At the weekends, I................ get up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock.
ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ hast to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ have to

1045. Everyone...................... do a random act of kindness sometimes.
ⓐ should to ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ have to ⓓ has to



1046. You...................... pass your exams to go to university.
ⓐ should ⓑ don't have to
ⓒ have to ⓓ doesn't have to

1047. You...................... do your homework at the same time every day.
ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ have to ⓓ has to

1048. You...................... show your passport when you leave the country .
ⓐ have to ⓑ has to ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ needn't

1049. We...................... cook more; there's enough food.
ⓐ have to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ has to ⓓ should

1050. I don't like that uniform, but I...................... wear it at work.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ have to ⓓ don't have to

1051. It's cold. You...................... wear your jacket.
ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ should ⓒ don't have to ⓓ mustn't

1052. She's always tired. She .... go to bed late every night.
ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ should ⓒ don't have to ⓓ have to

1053. You .... remember to close the windows when you leave the house.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ should ⓓ has to

1054. You .... eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.
ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ shouldn't

1055. I...................... wear glasses because I can't see very well.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ have to ⓓ shouldn't

1056. I...................... wear glasses because I can't see very well.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ has to ⓓ should

1057. Hany...................... go to school on time.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have ⓓ has to

1058. It is cloudy today, so we...................... take our sunglasses.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ not have to ⓒ don't have ⓓ have not to

1059. Good students...................... to take private lessons.
ⓐ won't ⓑ haven't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ don't have

1060. .... Sara have to get up early?
ⓐ Are ⓑ Is ⓒ Do ⓓ Does

1061. What game do you have......................?
ⓐ practise ⓑ practising ⓒ to practise ⓓ practise

1062. You...................... play football here. It's dangerous.
ⓐ have to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

Relative Pronouns
ضمائر الوصل

1063. I work for a charity...................... looks after animals.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1064. I love the trainers...................... are blue and red.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1065. You left the bag .... you bought at the weekend at my house.
ⓐ who ⓑ that ⓒ where ⓓ when

1066. This is the museum...................... the school visited last week.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1067. This is the museum...................... I took many photos.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1068. This is the museum...................... I took many photos at.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1069. This is the museum at .... I took many photos.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1070. This is the museum...................... there are many statues.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1071. This is the museum...................... there are many statues at.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1072. This is the museum...................... I saw many statues.
ⓐ who ⓑ at which ⓒ at where ⓓ when

1073. I like June .... I was born.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1074. I like June .... I was born in.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1075. I like June .... is the beginning of summer.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ when

1076. I saw Mohamed .... has a Range Rover car.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1077. I saw Mohamed .... a Range Rover car.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1078. I saw Mohamed .... driving a Range Rover car.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1079. I saw Mohamed .... Range Rover car is very expensive.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1080. I saw the car of Mohamed .... is very fantastic to see.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1081. I saw the car of Mohamed .... very fantastic to see.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ which ⓓ which's

1082. I think he is a kind of person .... I don't like a lot.
ⓐ who ⓑ who's ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1083. Mrs Zaki is the teacher .... helped me the most when I started this school.
ⓐ who's ⓑ whose ⓒ which ⓓ who

1084. The present .... I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.
ⓐ where ⓑ which ⓒ who ⓓ whose

1085. Alexandria is the city..................... both my big sisters are studying.
ⓐ that ⓑ which ⓒ when ⓓ where

1086. We bought a flat..................... is near the school.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ what

1087. What's the name of the book..................... you are reading?
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ what

1088. The people..................... live next door are very friendly.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ whom

1089. This is the village..................... my father was born.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ what

1090. Please show me the photos..................... you took on Sports Day.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ what

1091. Tennis is a game .... many people enjoy.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ what

1092. That's the sports club..................... my brother plays basketball.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ that

1093. That is the shop..................... Magda bought her jumper.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ that ⓓ where

1094. Alexandria is the city..................... we like most.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ when ⓓ where

1095. Alexandria is the city..................... we went last week.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ when ⓓ where

1096. Alexandria is the city..................... we live.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ when ⓓ where

1097. Alexandria is the city..................... we live in.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ when ⓓ where

1098. Mr Ali, ... is a teacher, is very kind and helpful.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ that

1099. Arabic is a language...................... is spoken in many countries.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ where ⓓ what

1100. This is the place .... my professor had the accident.
ⓐ where ⓑ when ⓒ who ⓓ which

1101. We arrived at a nice beach................... we could swim and sit in the sun.
ⓐ who ⓑ which ⓒ what ⓓ where

1102. A waiter is a man...................... serves drinks and food in a restaurant.
ⓐ who ⓑ when ⓒ whose ⓓ which

1103. Thank you very much for your e-mail .... was very interesting.
ⓐ what ⓑ who ⓒ where ⓓ that

1104. We went to the mosque .... is in the middle of the square.
ⓐ which ⓑ where ⓒ who ⓓ whose

1105. I saw Mr Masaoud in the park .... we often meet.
ⓐ which ⓑ where ⓒ who ⓓ what

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

NECESSITY AND OBLIGATION

Have to & Has to

الالزام والضرورة

347. At our school we .... (haven't to) wear a uniform.
348. .... (Does) the boys have to get up early?
349. You...................................... (doesn't)have to shout. I can hear you.
350. We...................................... (has to) leave now or we will miss the plane.
351. You...................................... (have to) go to school today. It's Friday.
352. We.................. (not have) to go to school tomorrow because it's a holiday.
353. You .... (have to) smoke in the hospital.
354. You .... (have to) park here. It's against the law.
355. You .... (must) to help me with my difficult tasks.
356. I don't know what I............................ (shouldn't) do with my old clothes.
357. You .... (must) park your car here. It's against the law.
358. Mustn't she .... (goes) to school on Saturday?
359. Mona .... (have) get up early for the picnic.
360. ....(Must) you have to clean your room?
361. I .... (not) have to go to school today.

362. If you want to be healthy, you must .... (does) sports.
363. There is a "No Smoking " sign. We........................... (must) smoke here.
364. Ali .... (not have) to visit Alexandria at present.
365. Does my son .... (must) take this medicine, doctor?
366. Must you wash the dishes? No, I .... (do).
367. You have to............................ (wore) special clothes for your sports class
368. She............................ (have to) show her mother her homework.
369. You should .... (cleans) your room.
370. Should .... (helping I) you?

Relative Pronouns
ضمائر الوصل

371. This is the place............................ (who) I visited last week.
372. Football is a sport............................ (where) I like.
373. A good friend is someone............................ (which) helps others.
374. Cairo is the city............................ (who) is crowded.
375. I gave the shoes............................ (who)are too small for me to my cousin.
376. That's the man............................ (which) bought our old car.
377. The cafe......................... (who) I meet my friends sells delicious ice-cream.
378. I saw the villa............................ (who) my father bought.
379. I can't find the pen............................ (where) I bought.
380. At the zoo, there is a parrot......................... (where) can talk to the people.
381. El-Hussienia is the city............................ (who) I was born.
382. El-Hussienia is the city............................ (who) I was born in .
383. El-Hussienia is the city in .... (who) I was born.
384. El-Hussienia is the city............................ (who) I visited last year.
385. Did you see the car............................ (who) Adel bought?
386. I need someone............................ (which) can fix my washing machine.
387. Sham El-Nassim is a day .... (who) marks the beginning of spring.
388. Sham El-Nassim is a day .... (who) spring begins.



UNIT 6 DIFFERENT ENVIRONMENTS



Vocabs. and Language Notes

المفردات والملاحظات اللغوية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1106. Please take your .... home; do not leave it in the park.
ⓐ rubbish ⓑ grass ⓒ jewellery ⓓ music

1107. It was raining for days and then there was a...................., so people used boats to leave their houses!
ⓐ flood ⓑ storm ⓒ drought ⓓ storm

1108. There are a lot of cars in the city so the air.................... is very bad.
ⓐ polluting ⓑ pollute ⓒ polluted ⓓ pollution

1109. There are a lot of cars in the city so the air becomes .... and very bad.
ⓐ polluting ⓑ pollute ⓒ polluted ⓓ pollution

1110. There are a lot of cars which are .... the air in the city.
ⓐ polluting ⓑ pollute ⓒ polluted ⓓ pollution

1111. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a......... .
ⓐ flood ⓑ storm ⓒ drought ⓓ storm

1112. There was much rain for four months this winter, so now there is a ....
ⓐ flood ⓑ storm ⓒ drought ⓓ storm

1113. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ....
ⓐ polluting ⓑ pollute ⓒ polluted ⓓ pollution

1114. Bikes are a/ an.................... form of transport because they use no fuel.
ⓐ fuel ⓑ green ⓒ oil ⓓ petrol

1115. Drier weather is.................... the ice on the top of the mountains.
ⓐ sinking ⓑ trying ⓒ leaving ⓓ melting

1116. The.................... is getting higher because the climate is changing.
ⓐ environment ⓑ mark ⓒ temperature ⓓ mountain

1117. Climate change can cause ice on tops of mountains to............ .
ⓐ dry ⓑ melt ⓒ snow ⓓ rain

1118. Many countries try things to help the environment.
ⓐ recycling ⓑ cycling ⓒ damaging ⓓ throwing

1119. .... energy doesn't damage the environment. It's good for it.
ⓐ Fuel ⓑ Green ⓒ Oil ⓓ Petrol

1120. Don't leave your.................... here. You should take it to the nearest bin.
ⓐ rubbish ⓑ children ⓒ experiments ⓓ tools



1121.People think that beaches are............ because people go there and forget their worries.
ⓐ relax ⓑ relaxed ⓒ relaxing ⓓ relaxation

1122.The..................... in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
ⓐ climate ⓑ weather ⓒ whether ⓓ air

1123.It's raining heavily this week. I think there will be a serious..................... .
ⓐ drought ⓑ fire ⓒ flood ⓓ sinking

1124.......... cars are better than usual cars. They don't pollute the environment.
ⓐ Electricity ⓑ Electrical ⓒ Electric ⓓ Electrician

1125.The fire was caused by an .... fault.
ⓐ electricity ⓑ electrical ⓒ electric ⓓ electrician

1126.He trained as an .... while in a company.
ⓐ electricity ⓑ electrical ⓒ electric ⓓ electrician

1127.The farm was very isolated, but it had ....
ⓐ electricity ⓑ electrical ⓒ electric ⓓ electrician

1128.Every activity people do can damage or help the.....................we live in.
ⓐ environment ⓑ experiment ⓒ laboratory ⓓ equipment

1129.Some countries have serious............ because there isn't any rain for a long time.
ⓐ emergency ⓑ accidents ⓒ floods ⓓ droughts

1130.Egypt has a warm..................... all over the year.
ⓐ climate ⓑ weather ⓒ air ⓓ wind

1131.This week, the..................... is going to be very hot.
ⓐ storm ⓑ weather ⓒ atmosphere ⓓ climate

1132.More..................... mean worse fires than ever before.
ⓐ floods ⓑ floats ⓒ droughts ⓓ draughts

1133.Water..................... became much worse than the last ten years.
ⓐ pollution ⓑ population ⓒ station ⓓ decision

1134.Polluted food..................... you to become ill or sick.
ⓐ makes ⓑ spends ⓒ feels ⓓ causes

1135.Droughts are as .... as floods.
ⓐ safe ⓑ amazing ⓒ serious ⓓ relaxing

1136.My home town is .... on the coast. It's in the south-east.
ⓐ closed ⓑ positioned ⓒ located ⓓ lied

1137.Mohamed Salah, the famous sports person, is..................for his kindness.
ⓐ opened ⓑ known ⓒ closed ⓓ spent

1138.My computer is..................... to the internet, so I search easily for anything I want.
ⓐ contacted ⓑ communicated ⓒ tied ⓓ connected

1139.Many people like to visit Port Said to..................... fish.
ⓐ feed ⓑ spend ⓒ catch ⓓ hold

1140. I visited Al-Ahmadi Mosque in Tanta and..................... in it.
ⓐ dived ⓑ fished ⓒ prayed ⓓ played

1141. Egypt has wonderful ancient..................... which tourists like to visit.
ⓐ monuments ⓑ experiments ⓒ developments ⓓ movements

1142. Most fruit and vegetables are..................... in the local area.
ⓐ fed ⓑ grown ⓒ lived ⓓ located

1143. Minya has delicious black..................... made from sugar.
ⓐ honey ⓑ rose ⓒ flower ⓓ cotton

1144. Bread is made from..................... .
ⓐ cotton ⓑ potatoes ⓒ sugar ⓓ wheat

1145. A..................... is a long area of water made for ships or boats.
ⓐ coast ⓑ park ⓒ canal ⓓ beach

1146. .... is a plant used for making clothes.
ⓐ Cotton ⓑ Sugar ⓒ Wheat ⓓ Flower

1147. .... is a plant used for making clothes.
ⓐ Linen ⓑ Sugar ⓒ Wheat ⓓ Flower

1148. Mr Masaoud is famous for his........... stories. We all laugh a lot when we hear them
ⓐ boring ⓑ ugly ⓒ expensive ⓓ funny

1149. .... should look after the environment when they visit a country.
ⓐ Tourism ⓑ Tourists ⓒ Guides ⓓ Owners

1150. Farmers plant a lot of orange trees..................... the river.
ⓐ a long ⓑ along ⓒ long ⓓ longer

1151. Owners of hotels should..................... the environment.
ⓐ protect ⓑ attack ⓒ take ⓓ damage

1152. The hotel is located..................... a lovely beach.
ⓐ on ⓑ out ⓒ of ⓓ in

1153. The few turtles on the beach are in danger. As a..............., the hotel is helping them.
ⓐ cause ⓑ result ⓒ reason ⓓ mark

1154. Workers on the boats..................... that coral reefs are damaged by scuba divers.
ⓐ believe ⓑ respect ⓒ protect ⓓ collect

1155. We should stop tourists..................... damaging the environment.
ⓐ to ⓑ from ⓒ at ⓓ by

1156. Tourists, ... around the world, visit the Red Sea every year.
ⓐ to ⓑ from ⓒ at ⓓ by

1157. My father always asks us to........... suggestions about how to spend the weekend.
ⓐ make ⓑ buy ⓒ take ⓓ borrow

1158. Adults are the people who are able to............... and choose the person they want.
ⓐ vote ⓑ sound ⓒ avoid ⓓ voice

1159. My mother always tells me how to...................... my problems alone.
ⓐ attack ⓑ kill ⓒ solve ⓓ collect

1160. My class decided that we could...................... bottles to recycle them.
ⓐ drop ⓑ throw ⓒ attract ⓓ collect

1161. .... is the way we reuse old things to become new again.
ⓐ Cycling ⓑ Recycling ⓒ Throwing ⓓ Dropping

1162. Climate change is a...................... problem that we should care about.
ⓐ community ⓑ national ⓒ local ⓓ global

1163. People in my local area decided to clean up the............... to reduce water pollution.
ⓐ garden ⓑ Park ⓒ riverbank ⓓ street

1164. My mother always advises me to be careful...................... my money.
ⓐ at ⓑ with ⓒ under ⓓ to

1165. Rubbish in the river...................... the wildlife.
ⓐ stores ⓑ damages ⓒ protects ⓓ produces

1166. When there is too much smoke coming out from factories, it............ air pollution.
ⓐ causes ⓑ stops ⓒ protects ⓓ saves

1167. The price of the room in this hotel is 500 pounds a night...................... breakfast.
ⓐ introducing ⓑ paying ⓒ including ⓓ producing

1168. Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city...................... .
ⓐ corner ⓑ centre ⓒ border ⓓ wall

1169. My mother often...................... me to get my school bag ready before I sleep.
ⓐ reminds ⓑ remembers ⓒ writes ⓓ shows

1170. He often...................... to get my school bag ready before he sleeps.
ⓐ reminds ⓑ remembers ⓒ writes ⓓ shows

1171. He often...................... her get my school bag ready before she sleeps.
ⓐ reminds ⓑ remembers ⓒ writes ⓓ shows

1172. .... is/are sometimes damaged by boats.
ⓐ Air ⓑ Hotels ⓒ Tourism ⓓ Coral reef

1173. We should put rubbish in ....
ⓐ bins ⓑ pots ⓒ bowls ⓓ mirrors

1174. A lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can...................... to climate change.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ get ⓓ lead

1175. Global Recycling Day is an important...................... in March
ⓐ event ⓑ match ⓒ movie ⓓ song

1176. My six-...................... -old cousin is here and wants to play a game.
ⓐ year ⓑ years ⓒ year's ⓓ years'

1177. My .... cousin is here and wants to play a game.
ⓐ six year old ⓑ six-year-old
ⓒ six years old ⓓ six-years-old

1178. My cousin .... is here and wants to play a game.
ⓐ six year old ⓑ six-year-old
ⓒ six years old ⓓ six-years-old

1179. I want a .... break.
ⓐ ten-minute ⓑ ten-minutes ⓒ ten minute ⓓ ten minutes

1180. Yasser was .... a school project on someone in his family.
ⓐ doing ⓑ making ⓒ spending ⓓ leaving



Simple Present in Passive

المضارع البسيط في المبني للمجهول

1181. Alexandria .... in the north of Egypt.
ⓐ located ⓑ is locating ⓒ is located ⓓ locates

1182. The farmers around here...................... many vegetables.
ⓐ growing ⓑ are grown ⓒ grow ⓓ is growing

1183. The museum....................... by lots of people every year.
ⓐ is visiting ⓑ are visited ⓒ visits ⓓ is visited

1184. He .... by lots of people.
ⓐ is visiting ⓑ was visited ⓒ visits ⓓ is visited

1185. He .... by lots of people yesterday.
ⓐ is visiting ⓑ was visited ⓒ visits ⓓ is visited

1186. The museum....................... in 2020.
ⓐ is building ⓑ is built ⓒ was built ⓓ was building

1187. The city .... for its beautiful buildings.
ⓐ is known ⓑ knows ⓒ is knowing ⓓ knew

1188. Lots of cotton....................... in the area.
ⓐ are grown ⓑ is grown ⓒ grew ⓓ grows

1189. Many fish .... in the sea near Port Said.
ⓐ caught ⓑ is caught ⓒ are caught ⓓ catch

1190. .... the thief caught by the police officer?
ⓐ Is ⓑ Has ⓒ Does ⓓ Will

1191. .... Ahmed read the story every day?
ⓐ Is ⓑ Have ⓒ Does ⓓ Did

1192. .... the story read every day?
ⓐ Is ⓑ Have ⓒ Does ⓓ Did

1193. In summer, more ice cream .... than in winter.
ⓐ ate ⓑ eats ⓒ is eating ⓓ is eaten

1194. The flowers are watered .... my brother every morning.
ⓐ of ⓑ at ⓒ with ⓓ by

1195. This writer's articles .... by many people.
ⓐ read ⓑ are read ⓒ are reading ⓓ reading

1196. German...................... as a second language in our school.
ⓐ is speaking ⓑ speaking ⓒ speaks ⓓ is spoken

1197. Petrol...................... from oil.
ⓐ making ⓑ made ⓒ is made ⓓ makes

1198. The walls aren't...................... by my mother.
ⓐ painted ⓑ painting ⓒ paint ⓓ paints

1199. Many ancient monuments and buildings are...................... in the city.
ⓐ found ⓑ find ⓒ finding ⓓ finds

1200. My room...................... every day.
ⓐ was cleaned ⓑ is cleaning ⓒ is cleaned ⓓ cleans

1201. My room...................... yesterday.
ⓐ was cleaned ⓑ is cleaning ⓒ is cleaned ⓓ cleans

Adjectives الصفات

1202. Recycling is .... as using less electricity for the environment.
ⓐ more important ⓑ most important
ⓒ so important ⓓ as beautiful

1203. Mount Kenya is not as nigh .... Mount Kilimanjaro.
ⓐ as ⓑ than ⓒ to ⓓ so

1204. This book is bad, but the other book is...................... .
ⓐ worse ⓑ worst ⓒ more worse ⓓ badly

1205. This month was........... than last month because we had some big storms.
ⓐ wet ⓑ more wetter ⓒ the wettest ⓓ wetter

1206. Lying on a beach is...................... than working in the city.
ⓐ relaxing ⓑ most relaxing
ⓒ more relaxing ⓓ as relaxing

1207. Plastic pollution is .... now than it was before .
ⓐ bad ⓑ worse ⓒ worst ⓓ the worst

1208. There is a lot of traffic in Cairo; it is...................... than Marsa Alam.
ⓐ noisier ⓑ more noisier ⓒ nosiest ⓓ noise

1209. Ali says that football is not...................... as handball.
ⓐ so difficult ⓑ the most difficult
ⓒ more difficult ⓓ less difficult

1210. Figs are...................... as chocolate.
ⓐ so delicious ⓑ most delicious
ⓒ more delicious ⓓ as delicious

1211. Our house is...................... comfortable than this hotel.
ⓐ more ⓑ most ⓒ much ⓓ little

1212. Sarah is...................... than her sister.
ⓐ more young ⓑ young ⓒ younger ⓓ youngest

1213. Cars are...................... than motorbikes.
ⓐ safe ⓑ safer ⓒ more safer ⓓ safest

1214. Sharks are...................... than lions.
ⓐ dangerous ⓑ more dangerous
ⓒ much dangerous ⓓ most dangerous

1215. Hassan is a .... football player than anyone else in the team.
ⓐ good ⓑ best ⓒ better ⓓ the best

1216. We can run as...................... as they can.
ⓐ faster ⓑ fast ⓒ fastest ⓓ the fastest

1217. I do not earn as...................... money as you do.
ⓐ much ⓑ more ⓒ less d)many

1218. Mount Everest is...................... than Mount Kilimanjaro
ⓐ higher ⓑ high ⓒ highest ⓓ highly

1219. The museum is usually...................... on a Saturday than a Sunday.
ⓐ crowded ⓑ most crowded ⓒ more crowded ⓓ as crowed

1220. I think the blue dress is......................than the red dress.
ⓐ nicer ⓑ nicest ⓒ nicely ⓓ nice

1221. Adel is tall, but Rami is...................... .
ⓐ more taller ⓑ tallest ⓒ tall ⓓ taller

1222. Which bridge is........., the 6th October bridge or the Qasr El Nile bridge?
ⓐ long ⓑ longer ⓒ longest ⓓ longer than

1223. English is...................... than many other languages.
ⓐ easier ⓑ more easy ⓒ easiest ⓓ the easiest

1224. We can run as...................... as they can.
ⓐ faster ⓑ fast ⓒ fastest ⓓ the fastest

1225. Football is...................... popular game in Egypt.
ⓐ most ⓑ the most ⓒ less ⓓ more



1226. Which sport is...................... , football or tennis?
ⓐ good ⓑ better ⓒ better than ⓓ the best

1227. The new museum is...................... from Cairo than the old museum.
ⓐ far ⓑ the furthest ⓒ furthest ⓓ further

1228. The volunteers want to make the canal ....
ⓐ cleanest ⓑ more clean ⓒ cleaner ⓓ most clean

1229. The River Nile is .... than before.
ⓐ more polluted ⓑ polluted ⓒ pollute ⓓ polluter

1230. The electric buses in Alexandria are...................... the old buses.
ⓐ green ⓑ greener then ⓒ greener than ⓓ greener

1231. The football players are not playing as.................... as they did last week.
ⓐ good ⓑ well ⓒ better ⓓ best

1232. Who is ...., Ahmed or Ali?
ⓐ tall ⓑ taller than ⓒ tallest ⓓ the tallest

1233. Who is ...., Ahmed , Ali or Nader?
ⓐ tall ⓑ taller than ⓒ tallest ⓓ the tallest

1234. Which is ...., the Nile or the Amazon?
ⓐ long ⓑ longer than ⓒ the longest ⓓ longest

1235. Which is ...., the Nile ,the Amazon or the Mississippi ?
ⓐ long ⓑ longer than ⓒ the longest ⓓ longest

1236. Nader is the .... of the two boys.
ⓐ happy ⓑ happier than ⓒ the happiest ⓓ happiest

1237. Nader is the .... of the three boys.
ⓐ happy ⓑ happier than ⓒ the happiest ⓓ happiest

1238. Nader is the .... of the two brothers.
ⓐ happy ⓑ happier than ⓒ the happiest ⓓ happiest

1239. Nader is the .... of his two brothers.
ⓐ happy ⓑ happier than ⓒ the happiest ⓓ happiest



Unit 1 in brief Coming home

Important vocabulary

activity	نشاط	mirror	مرآة
alone	بمفرده	poor	فقير
armchair	كرسي بمسند	prison	سجن
attractive	جذاب	profile	ملف شخصي
basin	حوض	railway line	خط سكة حديد
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	routine	روتين يومي
bookshelf	رف الكتب	share	يشارك
carpet	سجاده	sofa	كنبة
chest of drawers	خزانه ذات أدراج	tap	حنفية
curtains	ستائر	tent	خيمه
cushion	مخدة	terrible	سيء
daily	يومي	text	نص او يرسل رسالة نصية
feed	يطعم	typical	نموذجي - معتاد
interview	مقابلة	village	قرية
lamp	مصباح	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
large	كبير / واسع	way	طريق

Prepositions and expressions

go to bed	يذهب للنوم	in many ways	بطرق مختلفة
walk to	يمشي الي	ride a bike	يركب الدراجة
listen to	يستمع الي	text friends	يراسل أصدقاء
work at	يعمل في	make dinner	يجهز العشاء
live with	يعيش مع	blocks of flat	عمارة سكنية
help to	يساعد في	on the sofa	علي الكنبة
help + مفعول + مصدر	يساعد .. في ...	on his way to	في طريقه الي..
drive me to school	يوصلني المدرسة	go for a walk	يخرج يتمشى
this is a photo for..	هذه صورة لـ..	do housework	يقوم بشغل البيت
at the beginning of..	في بداية	cup of tea	كوب شاي
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	on a typical day	في يوم مشابه
thank you for +.. ing	شكرا لك علي..	practise English	يمارس الانجليزية
have a breakfast break	يأخذ راحة للإفطار	keep clothes	يحفظ الملابس
share lunch with	يتقاسم الغذاء مع	get dressed	يرتدي ملابس
take...away	يأخذ...بعيدا	work hard	يعمل بجد
belong to	يخص \ينتمي الي	home with a garden	منزل بحديقة
lots of	كثير من	around the world	حول العالم
in prison	في السجن	on a bookshelf	علي رف كتب
write a reply to	يكتب رد لـ	careful with	حريص علي
tell about	يخبر عن	come from	قادم من
move from...to...	ينتقل من ...الي....	full of	ممتلئ بـ
an outside tap	حنفية خارجية	walk to	يمشي الي

Language Notes

Arrive -Reach - Get to

لا فرق بينهما الا في الاستخدام فقط

نستخدم (Arrive in) عندما نعبر عن وصولنا لمدن، او دول او نشير الى زمن وصولنا كشهر او تاريخ او فصل

نستخدم (Arrive at) عندما نعبر عن وصولنا الى اماكن داخل المدينة

مثلا محطة قطار ، محطة باص ، متحف ، مطار ، صالة سينما ، مطعم الخ .. أي مباني او اي اجزاء من المباني.

نستخدم (reach) وهي ايضا بمعنى يصل الى ...... او يبلغ شيئا او هدفا ولكن بدون استخدام اي حرف جر بعدها

نستخدم (get to) وهي ايضا بمعنى يصل الى ..... وهي الاكثر شيوعا واستخداما في المحادثات

ملحوظة : تستخدم الأفعال السابقة جميعا مع كلمة (home) بدون حرف جر

Routine- Red tape

- **Routine** روتين يومي
- **red tape** روتين حكومي

help

- **help +** مفعول **+** مصدر **/ to +** مصدر

By – In – On

- **by +** وسيلة مواصلات
- **in +** فاصل **+ car / taxi** (وسائل المواصلات التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها)
- **on +** فاصل **+ bus / train / plane / ship** (وسائل المواصلات التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها)

too - either

- **Too** أيضا (في اخر الاثبات والسؤال)
- **Either** أيضا(في اخر النفي)

That's why -because - because of

- **That's why \ so +** فاعل **+** فعل لذلك
- **Because +** فاعل **+** فعل لان
- **Because of +** اسم **/ V + ing** .... بسبب

Work in / at - work with - work for

- **Work in / at +** مكان يعمل في
- **Work with** يعمل مع
- **Work for** يعمل لدي

tap - tape

- **Tap** حنفية / صنبور
- **Tape** شريط





EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People put.................................. across windows to keep the light out.

a rugs | b curtains | c cushions | d sheets

2. This bed is very.................................. I slept very well!

a comfortable | b careful | c certain | d interesting

3. My grandparents live in a.................................. town. It isn't far from here.

a nearby | b near | c next to | d far

4. I'm looking .... my pen – have you seen it?

a about | b for | c on | d after

5. you should work.................................. to succeed.

a quick | b happy | c hard | d lazy

6. This isn't your book. It.................................. to your sister. Don t play with it.

a gives | b belongs | c owns | d spends

7. Tourists like visiting .... places.

a ugly | b dirty | c dull | d attractive

8. I go to the baker's with my mother..............; we always buy bread in the morning. WB

a day | b dairy | c daily | d dial

9. My brothers always..................................TV in the evening. SB

a listen | b go | c help | d watch

10. I saw Ahmed's father on his...........................to work this morning. WB

a away | b way | c say | d street

11. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, it's our ....

a work | b routine | c job | d mail

12. Can I use your phone to ....my mother, because mine is not working.

a tell | b cold | c call | d cool

13. I always ....a walk after having dinner at 10 'clock.

a listen to | b go for | c read on | d help to

14. My favourite ....is English.

a subject | b sport | c hobby | d place

15. Our father is very kind. He always helps us ....housework.

a did | b doing | c do | d done

16. You shouldn't ....too much TV.

a match | b watch | c catch | d patch

17. My unique style in reading is reading ....the sofa.

a in b of c at d on

18. Come and sit on this................................Four people can sit on it. WB

a chair b table c. desk d sofa

19. My parents sometimes get ....late.

a at home b for home c to home d home

20. This is a photo................................my family .

a at b for c of d in

21. Captain Salwa , Could we ....you for our school magazine ?

a view b interview c routine d text

22. I and my father sometimes................................chess

a play b do c take d have

23. Students should get ....early on school days.

a to b with c up d of

24. Her family were so................................They couldn't buy her new clothes.

a ugly b poor c beautiful d rich

25. I like reading short stories, it`s my favourite ....

a hobby b happy c habit d subject

26. My sister ....her cat every day , she likes it .

a feeds b food c eats d feet

27. He was sent to ....because he killed his neighbour.

a person b prison c present d prize

28. I always ....my homework after coming home.

a make b play c do d take

29. I walk ....school with my brothers.

a to b at c with d for

30. I go to school by bus ....my friend Dina.

a for b by c at d with

31. Excuse me, Can you take me ....your way to work ?

a in b for c on d with

32. To................................means to give food to a person , group or an animal.

a feed b fool c feel d reed

33. I .... the same room with my brother.

a share b buy c get d build



34. I always walk .... school with my friends.

a for   b to   c at   d in

35. Let's.................................. swimming.

a play   b do   c visit   d go

36. Giza is a large .... with a lot of monuments.

a square   b country   c street   d city

37. Zeina spends much time in front of the .... looking at herself.

a wardrobe   b bed   c mirror   d drawer

38. We changed all the .... to match the windows.

a sofas   b beds   c curtains   d carpets

39. After dinner, I sit in a deep .... to read my favourite book.

a seat   b armchair   c wheelchair   d bath

40. My bedroom .... is red and blue.

a car   b TV   c carpet   d mirror

41. Can you .... your city for me ?

a protect   b design   c explode   d describe

42. They bought a .... house because their old one was small.

a large   b narrow   c tiny   d little

43. The .... is the road that the train travels on.

a railway line   b headline   c deadline   d line

44. If something is terrible. It's ....

a very good   b very nice   c very bad   d very rich

45. We have" a breakfast .... " after the third lesson at school.

a bark   b break   c broke   d peak

46. My room has a wash ....

a sofa   b basin   c chair   d mirror

47. This .... helps me to read in bed at night.

a window   b curtain   c lamp   d basin

48. I have a .... in my bedroom where I wash my face before I go to bed.

a sofa   b mirror   c basin   d wardrobe

49. Tell me.................................. your typical daily routine in Germany!

a about   b off   c on   d with

50. Our school.................................. at three o'clock

a walks   b makes   c finishes   d feeds

Grammar in brief

Present simple المضارع البسيط

◆ استخدامه

المضارع البسيط ده زمن بستخدمه لما احب أتكلم عن حدث يتكرر بشكل دوري

◆ تكوينه

He / She / It (الفاعل المفرد) ---------- الفعل **+s/ es / ies**

EX He likes apples. هو يحب التفاح

I / We / You / They (الفاعل الجمع) ------ مصدر (فعل بدون اضافة)

EX I like apples. أنا أحب التفاح

خلي بالك من النقطة الصغيرة دي : شوف الفرق بين (**s / es / ies**) مع المفرد

جميع الأفعال يضاف لها [s] ما عدا:

- والفعل الذي آخره [s/sh/ch/o/ x/z] يضاف إليه [es]. watch---watches
- الفعل الذي آخره [y] قبلها ساكن تقلب إلى [ies] study----studies

النفي (لا ..)

He / She / It (الفاعل المفرد) ---------- **doesn't +** مصدر

EX He doesn't like apples. هو لا يحب التفاح

I / We / You / They (الفاعل الجمع) ------**don't +** مصدر

EX I don't like apples. أنا لا أحب التفاح

كلماته الدالة

always	usually	often	sometimes	Occasionally	never
100%	80%	70%	50%	10 %	0%

طيب مكانها بقي في الجملة بيكون فين ؟؟؟؟هي بتيجي في موضعين

1) قبل الفعل , يعني نقول

EX He always comes late. (صح)

EX He comes always late. (غلط)

2) بعد الفعل اذا كان هذا الفعل هو (am / is / are) , يعني نقول

EX He always is late. (غلط)

EX He is always late. (صح)

لو حبيت اعمل سؤال عن عدد المرات نستخدم

How often + does / do + فاعل **+** مصدر **?**

◆الإجابة

Always -Sometimes -Never -Once مره واحدة -Twice مرتين - Three times ثلاث مرات

A (day فـ اليوم **- week** فـ الاسبوع **- month** فـ الشهر **- year** فـ السنة **)**





EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I.............................. get up late at the weekends. I never get up early.

a never | b always | c usually | d sometimes

2. What time.............................. your first lesson this morning?

a is | b are | c does | d do

3. She.............................. the bus to get to school.

a taking | b take | c takes | d talk

4. We.............................. to play tennis every week in the club.

a prefers | b preferred | c preferring | d prefer

5. Omer goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. He................. goes swimming.

a never | b sometimes | c always | d usually

6. Ali.............................. walks to school on Sunday, Monday, Tuesday and Thursday.

a often | b never | c always | d usually

7. I have breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning. I............ have breakfast at that time.

a often | b never | c usually | d always

8. Has she .... a personal mobile phone ? -Yes, she has.

a got | b get | c gets | d getting

9. .... have a snack at the club ? - Great idea.

a We shall | b Shall we | c Have we | d Do we

10. .... use the bathroom, please ? - Sure.

a Am | b Must I | c Can I | d Where I

11. Ahmed.............................. late.

a often is | b is always | c always is | d is every

12. Birds always .... in the early morning.

a singing | b to sing | c sings | d sing

13. Khaled never .... his homework in the evening.

a do | b does | c done | d doing

14. What time does he usually .... work?

a leave | b leaves | c leaving | d left

15. Roquia .... a sports car .

a never drive | b drives never | c never drives | d never

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1. My mother (help) ………………………………my sister do homework.
2. What (be) ………………………………your favourite subject?
3. He usually (cook) ………………………………lunch.
4. Roquia (get up) ………………………………at six o'clock.
5. Ahmed (visit/ usually) ………………………………her friends.
6. Omer (have) ………………………………three brothers.
7. They (sleep \ usually) ………………………………at 10 pm every night.
8. Where (do) ………………………………he play?
9. Yara (learn) ………………………………slowly.
10. You (not like) ………………………………soup.
11. My daily routine (be) ………………………………the same every.
12. I (doesn't) ………………………………listen to music.
13. (Does) ………………………………you play chess?
14. Zeina (always is) ………………………………ready.
15. He doesn't (watches) ………………………………films.
16. When (do) ………………………………he arrive?

Complete the dialogue:

Teacher : What's your (1) ………………………………?
Rana : I'm Rana.
Teacher : (2) ……………………………… do you live with ?
Rana : I live with my parents.
Teacher : How (3) ……………………………… time do you spend running?
Rana : I spend four hours running.
Teacher : Do you like (4) ………………………………?
Rana : Yes, I like sports. I always (5) ………………tennis with my friend Yara.
Teacher : Thank you, Hana. You can go now.
Rana : Thanks.

Complete the dialogue:

Amal : How do you get to school?
Kareem : I take the(1) ………………………………
Amal : What time is your first lesson this morning?
Kareem : I have maths (2) ……………………………… 8 o'clock.
Amal : Do you (3) ……………………………… to study ?
Kareem : Yes, my(4) ……………………………… subject is English.
Amal : (5) ……………………………… do you go home?
Kareem : I go home at 3 o'clock.
Amal : What do you do at the weekends?
Kareem : I always visit my grandparents.





Test based on unit 1

Listening

1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1) Rosa is from.................................
   a China b Egypt c India d England
2) Rosa shares a room with her.................................
   a mother b sister c grandmother d cousin
3) Rosa lives in a /an ....
   a village b city c school d island
4) Her family spend the weekend at ....
   a village b city c the sea d school

Language Functions

2- Complete the following dialogue :

Roquia : What's your brother (1) ....?
Yara : His name is Abdul-Rahman.
Roquia : (2) ....he older than you?
Yara : No, he isn't. He's the (3) ....person in the family.
Roquia : How (4) ....is he?
Yara : He's ten years old.
Roquia : What's his favourite sport?
Yara : He (5) ....playing football.

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues(أزهر)

1) Adel : Where do you live ?
   Ramy : ....
2) Nada : ....?
   Manar : I go to the library twice a week.

Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

On Sunday, Tom gets up at 10 o'clock. Then he reads his newspaper in the kitchen. He has breakfast at 11.30 and then he telephones his mother in Scotland.
In the afternoon, at 1.00, Tom plays tennis with his sister and after that, they eat dinner in a restaurant. At 6.00, Tom swims for one hour and then he goes by bike to his brother´s house. They talk and listen to music.Tom watches television in the evening and drinks a glass of warm milk. He goes to bed at 11.30.

A- Answer the following question.

1. Where does Tom have breakfast?

....

2. What time does he play tennis with his sister?

....

3. How long does Tom swim for?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

4. Who does he telephone in the morning?
   a His sister   b His brother   c His mother
5. Where does his mother live?
   a In England   b In his brother's house   c In Scotland
6. How does Tom go to his brother's house?
   a By bike   b By car   c On foot

Vocabulary and Structure

4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- In summer, we sleep with ....open.
   a sofas   b beds   c curtains   d carpets
2- I always help my grandmother..................................her shopping.
   a of   b with   c for   d to
3- How..................................do you watch TV? -twice.
   a always   b often   c every   d long
4- ....sun is bigger than the earth.
   a The   b An   c A   d No article
5- In the library, books are arranged on ....
   a bookcases   b book shelves   c book covers   d book desks
6- Be careful! There's a fast car coming ....us.
   a over   b behind   c under   d above
7- I need your camera to ....some photos.
   a take   b make   c do   d give
8- My favourite sport is ....tennis.
   a a   b no article   c the   d an
9- My bedroom ....is red and blue.
   a car   b TV   c carpet   d mirror
10- We sometimes ....sports or play music.
   a play   b do   c make   d take

6- Complete the sentences with the correct form:

1) He (don't) go swimming on Fridays. (........................)
2) Mona (never is) late. (........................)
3) Does Ahmed(walks) to school? (........................)
4) Physics(has) the most difficult subject. (........................)

Writing

6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(Your weekend)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Unit 2 in brief How are you feeling?

Important vocabulary

airport	مطار	news	أخبار
blind	أعمى	park	منتزه / حديقة
calligraphy	الخط العربي	pattern	نموذج
communicate	يتواصل	pity	شفقة
congratulations!	مبروك	port	ميناء
conversation	محادثة	repair	يصلح
deaf	أصم	sewing	خياطة
desert	صحراء	sign language	لغة الشارة
empathy	تعاطف	skin	جلد
food stall	كشك طعام	striped	مخطط / مقلم
grateful	حافظ للجميل	suit	يناسب
greetings	تحيات	suitcase	حقيبة يد
guest	ضيف / نزيل فندق	teenager	مراهق
hanging	معلق	ward	عنبر
interview	مقابلة شخصية	weeding	ازاله الأعشاب

Prepositions and expressions

look after	يعتني بـ.....	get up	يستيقظ
lots of	كثير من	tell .... about	يخبر ..... عن
live in	يعيش في	park ...... at	يركن ..... في
stay at	يقيم في	listen to	يستمع ل.....
spend ..... with	يقضي مع	wave to	يلوح ل...
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	drive around	يقود حول
communicate with	يتواصل مع	middle of	منتصف
stay in bed	يبقي في السرير	make sure that	يتأكد ان
stay at home	يبقي بالمنزل	at the weekend	في نهاية الاسبوع
feel a bit bored	يشعر بقليل من الملل	do the homework	يقوم بالواجب
have breakfast with	يتناول الإفطار مع	do an activity	يقوم بنشاط
Go on a school trip	يذهب في رحلة مدرسية	give a surprise	يفاجئ
look forward to + ing	يتطلع الي	On a boat	علي قارب
Make a calligraphy book	يعد كتابا في فن الخط	Take long	يستغرق طويلا
Everything is ready	كل شيء جاهز	have a rest	ينال قسط من الراحة

Language Notes

feel – fail – fill – fall

- **Feel – felt - felt** يشعر
- **Fail - failed- failed** يفشل - يرسب
- **Fill – filled - filled** يملأ
- **Fall - fell - fallen** يقع

spend time

- **spend time + ing /**الاسم يقضي وقت في
- **spend time with +** شخص اسم

communicate with / communicate in

- **communicate with** يتواصل مع أشخاص
- **communicate in** + اللغة

stay in/at - stay with - stay for

- **stay in/at** يقيم في مكان
- **stay with** يقيم مع
- **stay for** يبقى لمدة

excited- exciting

- **Exciting** (صفه **+ ing**) تستخدم لوصف مسبب الشعور
- **Excited** (صفه **+ ing**) تستخدم لوصف الشعور الذي نشعره

Remember – Remind

- **Remember** يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه

EX I remembered to buy sugar yesterday.

- **Remind** يذكر

EX Remind me to buy sugar.

Alone – Lonely

- **Alone** بمفرده (لا أحد معه)
- **Lonely** (وحيد) يشعر بالوحده

trip – voyage – flight

- **Trip** رحلة عمل رحلة قصيرة
- **Voyage** رحلة بحرية
- **Flight** رحلة جوية

get – get to – get on – get off

- **get** يحصل على
- **get to** يصل الى
- **get on** يركب
- **get off** ينزل

get ready to – get ready for

- **get ready to +** مصدر
- **get ready for +** اسم **(v+ing)** يستعد لــــــ



EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Doctors look .... patients at hospitals.
a to b for c forward d after

2. If you are tired, ... a rest .
a have b do c make d play

3. It's raining. Stay.................................. home.
a in b on c at d with

4. .... sure that this medicine is safe .
a Do b Make c Play d Have

5. Let's start , I'm getting everything ....
a read b ready c busy d free

6. My nephew works in a .... centre of Vodafone. .
a calls b calling c call d called

7. .... guard people and their possessions at night .
a Shop workers b Police officers c Nurse d Engineers

8. My TV is broken. Can you .... it?
a make b do c play d repair

9. I often .... my homework at night .
a do b make c play d learn

10. My mother makes good food-she is a fantastic ....
a cooker b cook c cooks d cooking

11. Maya and Hana are learning to swim .... the weekend .
a on b at c in d of

12. My little brother is very ....He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! WB
a excited b careful c lazy d hungry

13. We need a computer engineer to............our computer because it doesn't work. WB
a make b do c play d repair

14. The homework was very difficult, so I .... nervous.
a failed b fell c felt d filled

15. I can't come to the park because I .... the house today. WB
a clean b make c do d stay

16. My neighbour is a street food ....
a sell b seller c teller d tailor

17. Why do you think it's a .... film ?

a boring b bored c bore d boredom

18. I'm feeling .... so I want to go somewhere .

a thirsty b hungry c bored d tired

19. My aunt is a nurse, she looks after a whole .... alone.

a war b word c ward d warm

20. What activities would you prefer to .... ?

a make b do c play d learn

21. I often communicate .... my relatives on happy occasions.

a at b in c on d with

22. What game is Omar.................................. on the computer ?

a doing b making c playing d waving

23. It's very hot outside. Stay.................................. home.

a in b on c at d with

24. .... like to visit Egypt in winter to enjoy the warm weather .

a People b Neighbours c Tourists d Patients

25. I'm looking forward to .... the Pyramids.

a visit b visiting c visited d visits

26. I'm .... that you can't come to my party.

a great b shame c sorry d worry

27. If you don't know the meaning of a word ,try to .... it.

a read b guess c miss d enjoy

28. There are so many .... shops to buy presents.

a amazed b amazing c excited d surprised

29. I .... you are enjoying your trip.

a tell b say c hope d wait

30. Dad, I want to .... on the school trip ,please.

a make b do c go d play

31. Don't .... worried during the exam, you should be relaxed

a make b get c let d try

32. Try to .... the bad things in your life.

a remember b remind c repair d forget

33. Teenagers need a lot of .... to feel happy .

a food b sleep c clothes d money

34. Try to sleep eight .... 10 hours a night .

a at b on c to d with

35. It's difficult to .... friends in big cities .

a do b make c lose d miss

36. Don't .... , I'm sure things will get better.

a worry b go c wait d run

37. I haven't seen you for long. I really .... you.

a lose b miss c want d need

38. You shouldn't leave a child .... in the house.

a lonely b alone c along d alike

39. When he joined a new school, he .... friends with lots of students.

a built b made c did d came

40. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.

a take b tap c do d make

41. One of the best .... to be happy to remember the good things in your life.

a roads b ways c streets d paths

42. It is usually easy to .... with people in other countries if you speak English.

a listen b communicate c shout d cry

43. The nurse works on the .... for children.

a stadium b ward c playground d word

44. I have some good news for you. Guess .... ?

a how b what c when d why

45. I'm really happy. I've .... my math exam .

a failed b missed c lost d passed

46. Your father can .... his car on this road. It is very quiet.

a bark b put c park d fly

47. Fatma is................................ , so she can't hear you.

a dear b deaf c blind d kind

48. Don't sit on the .... It's dirty .

a blog b ground c soil d land

49. Please, ... sure that you write your emails carefully .

a make b take c do d have

50. I'm very .... to everyone that helped me with my problems.

a angry b grateful c ugly d nervous

Grammar in brief

Present continuous المضارع المستمر

◆ استخدامه

✦ المضارع المستمر بنستخدمه لما نحب نتكلم عن
1- حدث يحدث الأن , زي مثلا أقول (احنا بنتفرج علي التلفاز الأن)
2- حدث مؤقت , يعني مثلا أقول (الأسبوع ده بنجدد فـ البيت)
3- ترتيبات مستقبلية (أنا مسافر الاسبوع الجاي يوم الاثنين , حجزت التذاكر)
4- عند وصف حدث في صورة. (يعني مثلا نقول أحمد بيلعب شطرنج في الصورة دي)

◆ تكوينه

I------------------------- am	}	فعل + ing
He / She / It / مفرد -------- is		
We / You / They / جمع ---- are		

EX look, He is sleeping. هو نائم الآن

ملحوظة:

◀ إذا كان الفعل منتهى بـ e تحذف ال e قبل إضافة ing مثل. write ➡ writing

◀ وإذا كان الفعل منتهى بـ ie تحول إلى y ثم نضيف ing مثل. lie ➡ lying

◀ وإذا كان الفعل منتهى بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة ing مثل.
swim ➡ swimming - begin ➡ beginning.

◆ النفي (لا ..)

بنضع كلمة (not) بعد (am/is/are) ويبقي الفعل كما هو بـ (ing)

EX He isn't sleeping now.

◆ كلماته الدالة

Now الآن / look انظر / listen استمع / still مازال / today اليوم / At the moment فـ تلك اللحظة

This (day / week / month) هذا اليوم / الأسبوع / الشهر / at the present time فـ الوقت الحالي

EX Look, Ali is coming. انظر, علي قادم .
Listen, she's singing.

ملحوظة : يمكن استخدام (always) مع المضارع المستمر بعد (am / is / are)
لتدل علي الكثرة من حدوث الفعل.(علي بيتفرج ع التليفزيون كتير, لا ينبغي فعل هذا

EX Ali is always watching TV. He shouldn't do that.

◆ السؤال

1-السؤال بـ (هل ...) ؟

Is + he / she / it (مفرد) + فعل + ing?
Are + we / you / they (جمع) + فعل +ing ?

وده اجابته بتكون (yes / No) ونعكس (is/are) مع الفاعل
وانت بتعكس ان (Are you) بتتحول(I am) واننا بنضع (not) مع (No)

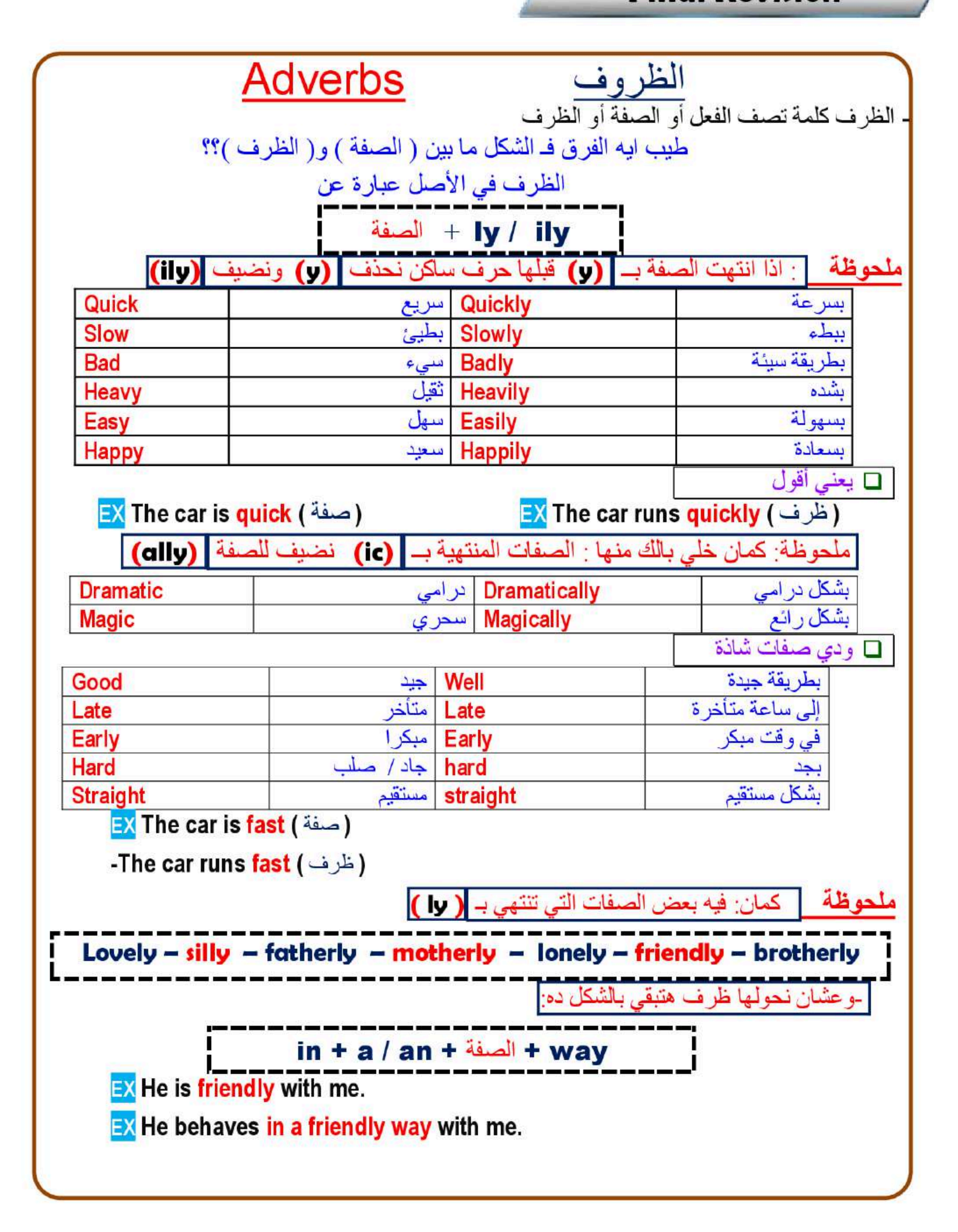
EX Are you coming today? هل ستأتي اليوم ؟
-Yes, I am.
-No , I`m not.

-السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام ...) ؟

اداة استفهام+is + he / she / it (مفرد) + فعل +ing?
اداة استفهام +are + we / you / they (جمع) +فعل +ing?

EX What are you doing now?
I'm listening to my teacher now.





Adverbs الظروف

- الظرف كلمة تصف الفعل أو الصفة أو الظرف

طيب ايه الفرق فـ الشكل ما بين (الصفة) و(الظرف)؟؟

الظرف في الأصل عبارة عن

الصفة + ly / ily

ملحوظة : اذا انتهت الصفة بـ **(y)** قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف **(y)** ونضيف **(ily)**

Quick	سريع	Quickly	بسرعة
Slow	بطيئ	Slowly	ببطء
Bad	سيء	Badly	بطريقة سيئة
Heavy	ثقيل	Heavily	بشده
Easy	سهل	Easily	بسهولة
Happy	سعيد	Happily	بسعادة

❑ يعني أقول

EX The car is **quick** (صفة)

EX The car runs **quickly** (ظرف)

ملحوظة: كمان خلي بالك منها : الصفات المنتهية بـ **(ic)** نضيف للصفة **(ally)**

Dramatic	درامي	Dramatically	بشكل درامي
Magic	سحري	Magically	بشكل رائع

❑ ودي صفات شاذة

Good	جيد	Well	بطريقة جيدة
Late	متأخر	Late	إلى ساعة متأخرة
Early	مبكرا	Early	في وقت مبكر
Hard	جاد / صلب	hard	بجد
Straight	مستقيم	straight	بشكل مستقيم

EX The car is **fast** (صفة)

-The car runs **fast** (ظرف)

ملحوظة كمان: فيه بعض الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(ly)**

Lovely – silly – fatherly – motherly – lonely – friendly – brotherly

-وعشان نحولها ظرف هتبقي بالشكل ده:

in + a / an + الصفة + way

EX He is **friendly** with me.

EX He behaves **in a friendly way** with me.



EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Omer ....sign language at school. SB
a learns b learning c learn d is learning

2- Mr Mohamed ....in a lovely flat. SB
a lives b living c live d is living

3- What ....Yara making for her uncle ? SB
a do b does c is d are

4- I always................................milk for breakfast. SB
a am drinking b drink c drinks d drinking

5- Ali................................a jacket today because it is very hot. WB
a doesn't wear b isn't wearing c don't wear d not wear

6- My father ....in a bank in the city centre.
a works b worked c am working d work

7- Khaled ....to work by train every day.
a traveling b travels c is traveling d travel

8- I can't come to the phone now. I ....a shower.
a am having b have c will have d am doing

9- We can't play tennis today because it ....
a rains b rained c is raining d rain

10- What do you do after school? - I ....a nap.
a usually took b took usually c take usually d usually take

11- My father ....me to school.
a is sometimes taking b sometimes takes
c sometimes take d taking

12- On Sundays, they................................volleyball in physical education class.
a plays b play c will be played d are playing

13- Hany often go to school on foot, but today his father................................him to school.
a drives b was driving c is driving d driving

14- ....sitting next to your best friend ? SB
a You do b do You c Are you d You are

15- ....the students in your class working ? WB
a Are b Have c Can d Do

16- She isn't ....at the hospital today.
a work b working c works d worked

17- What................................doing at the moment ?
a they are b are they c they were d were they

18- Birds always ....in the early morning.
a singing b to sing c sings d sing

19- Roquia and Zeina always................................in the home.
a help b helping c helps d to help



20- The police officer..................................a school today. WB

a visiting b visits c is visiting d visit

21- Ahmed.................in the shop, but his brother is ill so he is helping there today. WB

a isn't usually working b not usually work
c don't usually work d doesn't usually work

22- My friend sews.................................. SB

a bad b worst c worse d badly

23- Mr Mohamed speaks English.................................. SB

a well b good c best d better

24- The cat is sitting in the sun.................................. SB

a laziest b lazier c lazy d lazily

25- The teacher treats all her children.................................. SB

a kinder b kindest c kindly d kind

26- She is laughing ....in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. SB

a carefully b slowly c loudly d hungrily

27- We're sitting ....on the rocks because they are sharps ! SB

a carefully b loudly c excitedly d hungrily

28- It's at the end of the day and the guests are ....leaving.. SB

a slowly b loudly c excitedly d hungrily

29- I'm sitting under the tree and ....eating my lunch. SB

a badly b loudly c excitedly d hungrily

30- Radwa always paints..................................

a beautiful b happy c beautifully d good

31- The class listened..................................to their teacher.

a beautifully b quickly c easily d carefully

32- He climbed the hill..................................He wasn't tired at all.

a badly b friendly c hardly d easily

33- At the end of the school year, some students try.................to make up for the lost time.

a hardship b hardly c hard d hardest

34- The driver of the school bus drives ....

a carefully b careful c careless d slow

35- He arrived an hour ....but he caught the bus .

a late b lately c fast d hard

36- That bird is flying very.................................. WB

a careful b quick c loud d fast

37- The guests found their hotel..................................after they bought a map of the city.

a easy b easier c ease d easily

38- It is important to drive ....when it is raining. WB

a carefully b quickly c loudly d carelessly

39- Our football team will win because they are playing very.................................. WB

a well b quick c bad d good

40- Please, speak ....people at the back can't hear you.

a politely b wisely c loudly d carelessly



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s)

1) We(is) getting up early today to travel to Alex. (........................)
2) Look! He isn't (studied)Arabic (........................)
3) I (drinks) tea at the moment. (........................)
4) What are you (does) now? (........................)
5) Look! The birds (flies) high in the sky. (........................)
6) I am travelling to Cairo(yesterday). (........................)
7) Roquia is (write) an email at the moment. (........................)
8) My father is (works) on the farm now. (........................)
9) My mum(makes)lunch now. (........................)
10) There (aren't) a charger on the table. (........................)
11) She writes quick. (........................)
12) She is a well cook. (........................)
13) He drives dangerous. (........................)
14) She is a good singer. She sings good. (........................)
15) He is playing clever. (........................)
16) She is a quickly reader. (........................)
17) Ali speaks well English. (........................)
18) They spoke to us polite . (........................)

Complete the dialogue:

Maha and Dina are making a salad.

Maha : Today, we are going to make a nice salad. The first thing that you have to (1) .... is wash the tomatoes and cucumbers.
Dina : OK, I've done that. Do I cut the onions now?
Maha : Yes. (2)................, peel off the skin. After (3)............, cut the onions carefully.
Dina : OK. I've done that, too..
Maha : The next (4) ....is to cut the tomatoes and cucumbers.
Dina : That's easy

Complete the dialogue:

Ahmad : Hello, Do you like your (1) ....?
Adam : Yes, very much, and I like my teachers, too .
Ahmad : Where do you have your (2) ....lessons ?
Adam : In the laboratory. It's at the end of the (3) ....
Ahmad : Where (4) ....you talk to your friend ?
Adam : We talk at break in the playground.

Test based on unit 2

Listening

1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1- What does this photo describe ?

a a playground b a school c a cinema d a market

2- What can we see on the left?

a a woman b a lady c a nurse d a man

3- What does the man sell in his shop ?

a fruit b vegetables c meat d egg

4- What can we see on the right ?

a a woman b two women c two men d a man

Language Functions

2- Complete the following dialogue :

Sally : Hello, Manar. What are you doing?
Manar : I'm looking at my photo album.
Sally : Can I see your photos?
Manar : Sure. This a (1) .... of me and my friends.
Sally : It's beautiful.
Manar : It (2) .... when we were on the school trip.
Sally : Tell me about your friends.
Manar : In the (3) .... is my friend Mona. She was in front of us.
Sally : Who's the girl (4) .... the left?
Manar : She's Dalia. She's in the (5) .... T-shirt.

-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A. Gana : ....?
Khaled : I`m watching a film.

B. Mohammed : what are you doing Omar?
Omar : ....

Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

Omar decided that he wanted to be a doctor when he grows up He made his decision after seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China. So, Omar worked hard at school, passed all his exams and went to university to study to be a doctor.

He spent most of his time working, and had time to make many good friends. When he finished, he found a job as a doctor working in a village in northern India. He worked with a group of older doctors and a young doctor.

Most of the time, they worked in the small village hospital, but on two days a week they went to a nearby town and helped the Indian doctors who worked there. One day, when Omar was working in the larger hospital, a young man came in with a broken leg. He wasn't Indian. When the man saw Omar, he said, "Omar!
Do you remember me? We were in the same secondary school!"

❒ ***A) Answer the following questions:***

1) When did Omar decide he wanted to be a doctor?

....

2) Where did the doctor on the television programme work?

....

3) What was wrong with the young man who came into the hospital?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4) In which part of India was the village where Omar worked?
a The capital. b The north. c The south. d The east.

5) Who did Omar work with at first in India?
a Other doctors. b Some older and younger doctors,
c Older doctors. d A group of friends.

6) How did the young man in hospital know Omar?
a They were together in the same school. b Their parents were friends.
c They played for the same football team. d They met at the airport

Vocabulary and Structure

4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- It's good to be .... sometimes.
a lonely b alone c along d alike

2- How much meat do I need to buy for 15 dinner .... ?
a blessing b guessing c guests d guess

3- It is not polite of her to laugh ....
a loud b lazy c loudly d quiet

4- Policemen keep people .... at night .
a safe b safely c safety d ill

5- .... new friends is something difficult .
a Doing b Making c Building d Walking

6- That cat .... very now.
a play b playing c plays d played

7- Don't .... your car here, it's a police station .
a park b drive c repair d fly

8- ....,is the person who can`t hear people's voices .
a lazy b polite c kink d deaf

9- My mother looks .... my young sister, she does everything for her.
a at b for c after d forward to

10- They are listening .... to the teacher's explanation .
a happy b sad c eagerly d eager

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form:

1) He was singing happily at the moment. (.........................)
2) You should speak polite to me. (.........................)
3) Why do you driving so fast ? (.........................)
4) I write an article at this moment. (.........................)

Writing

6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

" Your best friend"

Unit 3 in brief

Great jobs

important vocabulary

agree	يوافق	infection	عدوى
bones	عظام	junior	فريق الكبار
brain	المخ	lungs	الرئتين
burn	يحرق	manager	مدير
championship	بطوله	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	nuclear	نووي
coach	مدرب	nursing	التمريض
competition	مسابقة	patron	راعي / ممول
countryside	الريف	princess	أميرة
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	proud	فخور
earthquake	زلزال	pump	يضخ
emergency	طوارئ	rubbish collectors	جامع القمامة
female	أنثى	scared	خائف
final	نهائي	scientist	عالم
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	senior	فريق الناشئين
handball	كرة اليد	street cleaners	عمال نظافة
heart	قلب	surgeon	جراح
hero	بطل	volunteer	متطوع
heroic	بطولي	win	يفوز

Prepositions and expressions

Try to	يحاول أن	In Africa	في أفريقيا
Some of	بعض من	Learn more about...	يتعلم اكثر عن..
Win.....against	يفوز بـ...ضد..	The first to ...	الاول في
Lose against	يخسر ضد	Be first in	يكون الاول في
Win by + v.+ing	يفوز بواسطة	Under 19 world cup	كاس العالم تحت 19
Proud of	فخور ب	Get a prize	يحصل علي جائزة
Famous for	مشهور ب	Get married	يتزوج
Feel pleased	يشعر بالسعادة	In the final	في النهائي
Reason for	سبب لـ...........	Look through	ينظر خلال

Language Notes

win / gain / earn

- **Win** يفوز

(a cup كأس /a medal ميدالية /a prize جائزة /a game مباراة /a race سباق /competition منافسة)

- **Gain** يكسب شيء معنوي

information معلومات / experience خبرة / fame شهرة

- **Earn** يكسب مالا يعيش منه

Money مال / نقود / his living قوت يومه

Like - alike - As

- **Like** مثل للتشبيه
- **Alike** متشابه / متساوي
- **As** مثل (وظيفة)

Too – either

- Too أيضا (تأتي أخر الجملة المثبتة)
- Either أيضا (تأتي أخر الجملة المنفية)

There – Their

- There ✕ here هناك ✕ هنا
- Their ضمير ملكية (ملكهم)

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1- Zamalek won the...................................against Al-Ahly.

a finally b finish c final d end

2- I feel very ....to meet you, Mr. Mohamed.

a pleased b pleasure c please d pleasing

3- Ahmed was ....a school project on his family.

a Working b playing c doing d making

4- Roquia was a...................................for the Red Crescent.

a voluntary b volunteer c tourist d worker

5- The Egyptian handball team won an important...................................last year.

a competition b completion c information d money



6- A.................................helps people who are poor, homeless or ill .

a school   b policeman   c hospitals   d charity

7- Omer is very.................................of his father.

a happy   b poor   c proud   d pride

8- For older people we use " .... "

a senior   b junior   c doctor   d competitor

9- Mr. Mohamed works for no money to help people, he is a ....

a charity   b volunteer   c worker   d doctor

10- I prefer living in the ....to enjoy fresh air.

a city   b natural disaster   c countryside   d town

11- A: What is your ....of birth?   -B: I was born on October,17th .

a place   b date   c nationality   d address

12- Egypt is famous..................................its nice weather.

a with   b to   c by   d for

13- Our national team deserves a respected foreign ....

a coach   b cushion   c player   d trainers

14- ....Is a sport with seven players in a team, they throw the ball into a goal to win.

a Football   b Volleyball   c Handball   d Tennis

15- A..................................is a terrible event such as an earthquake or floods.

a emergency   b natural disaster   c charity   d accident

16- A..................................knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.

a sports coach   b surgeon   c police officer   d hero

17- How many times our national football team won the African ....of nations

a glass   b cup   c saucer   d medal

18- Our Handball national team is one of the biggest teams in the ....

a World   b Africa   c Asia   d Europe

19- I'd like to write about my..................................mother.

a hero   b heroic   c heroin   d heroine

20- My father is the ....of a big company.

a manage   b managing   c managements   d manager

21- You can give money to a ....to help poor people.

a charity   b charitable   c chair   d chart

22- Nour El Sherbini..................................the World Squash Championship in 2020.

a win   b gained   c won   d gain



23- ....take air into the body.

a Heart b Lungs c Kidney d Liver

24- He is a ....,he protects people's lives and money.

a doctor b teacher c police officer d farmer

25- I don't think I ....the answer to this question.

a no b new c known d know

26- Dirty water from a river can ....you if you drink it.

a infect b enjoy c clean d mend

27- I went to my uncle's house yesterday, but nobody was...............................

a their b there c theirs d here

28- Zeina is good at English and she is good at maths...............................

a neither b so c too d either

29- Street...............................help to keep our cities clean.

a builders b makers c walkers d cleaners

30- I think rubbish ....can be heroes.

a reviewers b managers c collectors d bakers

31- This nurse won a prize for her ....work.

a silly b useless c heroic d ugly

32- The little girl is always ....of dogs. She doesn't like them.

a scary b proud c scared d fond

33- I asked Ali about the ....for his happiness.

a reason b season c cause d because

34- Good people work ....to achieve their goals.

a hardly b difficult c easily d hard

35- Children in Egypt ....school at the age of four.

a start b walk c finish d play

36- Mr. Mohamed studied English at Cairo...............................

a hospital b factory c University d museum

37- Mrs. Karima used to work as a ....in a big hospital.

a nurse b teacher c patient d professor

38- The heart ....blood around the body.

a pours b spills c bumps d pumps

39- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideas ....of years ago.

a thousand b thousands c hundred d tens

Grammar in brief

Used to

فاعل + **used to** + المصدر

-ودي بنستخدمها لما نحب نتكلم عن عادة أو حدث كان موجودًا في الماضي وانتهى , زي مثلا أقول :
(هو كان متعود يدخن) دي معناها انه خلاص بطل تدخين الحمد لله ,,

EX He used to smoke. [he doesn't smoke now]
EX We used to live in a small flat. [now we live in a big flat]

- ودي بيساويها فـ المعني

فاعل مفرد ⇒ **no longer** (لم يعد (مبقتش) ⇒ (فعل + **s**)
فاعل جمع \ **I** ⇒ + **no longer** ⇒ المصدر

EX She used to sleep early. -She no longer sleeps early.

It was my (اسم المالك**'s**) **habit to** + مصدر

EX It was her habit to sleep early.

النفي

didn't + **use to** + **inf**. المصدر

EX I didn't use to sleep late.

- ودي لو حبيت تعمل عليها سؤال بـ (هل ...) هتبقي بالشكل ده

Did +فاعل + **use to** + **inf.** مصدر ? هل كنت متعود علي ....؟

- يبقي خلي بالك كده اننا في حالة السؤال والنفي بنرجع (**used to**) لأصلها (**use**)

EX Did you use to sleep early? -Yes, I did.

◀ السؤال بأداة استفهام

أداة استفهام + **did** + فاعل + **use to** + **inf.** مصدر ?

EX How did you use to come to school when you were young?

◀ ملحوظة مهمة

لما بيجيبلي جملة فيها عادة كانت في الماضي (**used to**) ويجي بعد كده يجبلي (**but now**) فـ الجملة اللي بعدها بتكون مضارع بسيط (مثبت أو منفي) عكس الجملة الأولي (وممكن نستخدم في اخر الجملة المنفية **any longer**)

فاعل + **used to** + المصدر , **but now** + فاعل + (**doesn't \ don't**) .

EX She used to watch TV , but now she doesn't watch TV any longer.

فاعل + **didn't use to** + المصدر , **but now** + فاعل + (فعل + **s** \ مصدر) .

EX She didn't use to sleep late , but now she sleeps late.
مكنتش متعودة تنام متأخر , بس دلوقت بتنام متأخر .



EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't .... her yesterday.

a see | b saw | c seeing | d seen

2. How did you .... to the park?

a gone | b go | c went | d going

3. They didn't .... their friends last month.

a met | b meeting | c meet | d meets

4. Yara went .... last week.

a shop | b shops | c shopping | d shopper

5. It used to be .... to send letters by pigeons .

a pop | b not good | c not nice | d popular

6. My friend .... to swim fast.

a used | b used to | c didn't use to | d use

7. I used to .... football when I was younger.

a playing | b played | c play | d plays

8. He didn't .... smoke. Now , he does.

a used to | b uses to | c using | d use to

9. Did you .... to annoy your friends at school?

a use | b use to | c using | d used to

10. She used to..................................long hair.

a have | b having | c has | d had

11. He didn't..................................to arrive late.

a used | b use | c uses | d using

12. She is used to..................................the poor.

a help | b helps | c helped | d helping

13. What did he use to..................................?

a did | b does | c doing | d do

14. A knife is used..................................cutting meat.

a to | b for | c by | d off

15. ....he use to watch TV? - Yes, he did.

a Was | b Is | c Does | d Did

16. Ali used to..................................clever when he was young.

a be | b being | c do | d doing



17. He used to..................................useful things when he was young.

a be b being c do d doing

18. I didn't ....to live in such a big house.

a used b uses c using d use

19. Did he use to ....English?

a study b studied c studying d studies

20. He used to smoke ,but now he ....smoke.

a doesn't b don't c isn't d didn`t

21. He used to be lazy , but now he..................................

a is b isn't c don't d doesn't

22. Are your children used to ....a lot?

a walk b walks c walked d walking

23. She used to..................................mistakes.

a make b makes c made d making

24. The camera ....to take photographs.

a is using b is used c uses d used

25. When ....you go to bed last night?

a did b will c do d was

26. The secretary ....stay up late to finish her work .

a uses to b used to c is used to d is using to

27. I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any ....

a longer b most c long d longest

28. Radwa used to live in Cairo but she ....lives there.

a doesn't b no longer c any more d as long as

29. My friend ....to swim fast.

a used b used to c didn't use to d use

30. He didn't..................................score goals. Now , he does.

a used to b uses to c using d use to

31. Did you ....to annoy your friends at school?

a use b use to c using d used to

32. We used to..................................pigeons to send our letters.

a use b using c to use d not to use

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1. What ………………….(does) he use to eat?
2. She…………………….(uses) to cook well.
3. He used to be lazy, but now he…………….(wasn't.)
4. The book is used……………..(to) reading.
5. I used to………………………. (do) lazy.
6. He ………….(use) to smoke badly.
7. They used to ……….(playing) football.
8. He used to have long hair, but now he……………. isn't.
9. She is used to……………..(get)up early.
10. Did he……….(used) to study hard?

Complete the dialogue:

A reporter makes a report about footballers.

Reporter : Hello (1)………………. Is your name?
Footballer : Hamada shanah
Reporter : What did you (2) ……………to do 20 years ago?
Footballer :I used to (3)………….football .
Reporter :(4)…………..you earn much money from it?
Footballer : No, I didn't. we played because we loved playing for our country.
Reporter : I wish you more success.
footballer : (5)…………………

Complete the dialogue:

Mazin : Hello, Hany.
Hany : Hello, Mazin.
Mazin : Did you (1)…………………..to live in Cairo when you were young?
Hany : (2)……………………..I used to live in Giza.
Mazin : Did you use to (3)……………………………to school?
Hany : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.
Mazin : What hobby (4)……………………………you use to do?
Hany : I used to read stories. What about you?
Mazin : I used to (5)…………………………
Hany : Great



Test based on unit 3

Listening

1)Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) We are proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub because he is..................................
   a great b lazy c funny d old
2) He helps people by giving them new..................................
   a books b hearts c juice d legs
3) In 2001, Dr Magdy ....
   a died b killed c stopped working d married
4) Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in ....
   a Cairo b Aswan c Giza d Alex.

Language Functions

2- Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Where do you (1) .... ?
Arwa : I live (2) .... Giza
Ahmed : (3) .... do you come to school?
Arwa : I come by bus.
Ahmed : So, what do you (4) .... of your new school?
Arwa : I think it's a good school.
Ahmed : (5) .... you like your teachers there?
Arwa : Yes, I like them very much

-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

1) Magda : Didn't you use to use the computer?
   Mum : No , ...
2) A new student : ....?
   A teacher : It is on the first floor
   A new student : Thank you for helping.

Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

People used pigeons to communicate hundreds of years ago. However , tour guides in Colorado , USA, are using pigeons today ! The guides take photographs of the tourists who have travelled down an exciting river.They then use the pigeons to carry the cards from the camera 30 kilometers down the river to their office where they can print the photos.
They used to take the cards from the camera by car, but this took a long time. The pigeons take just 20 minutes .After the tourists have travelled to the office , the photos are ready to see .

❒ **A- Answer the following question:**

1) What do the pigeons carry ?

....

2) Why has this helped the tourists in Colorado?

....

3) Where is the office?

....





B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4) In the past , they used to .... the cards back to the office.
a drive b walk c ask the tourists to carry d not take

5) They print the photos in the..................................
a offices b shops c markets d clubs

6) The pigeons are .... than the cars
a slow b slower c fast d faster

Vocabulary and Structure

4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- He used to.................................. up early, when he was young.
a get b getting c gets d got

2- He is used to.................................. clever things.
a be b being c do d doing

3- Mrs. Zeina used to work as a .... in an international school.
a nurse b teacher c patient d professor

4- The heart .... blood around the body.
a pours b spills c bumps d pumps

5- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ....thousands of years ago.
a ideas b stories c patients d illness

6- I didn't .... to live in such a big house.
a used b uses c using d use

7- Roquia was a.................................. for the Red Crescent.
a voluntary b volunteer c tourist d worker

8- A .... always helps people when there is a disaster.
a engineer b teacher c charity worker d actor

9- I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any ....
a longer b most c long d longest

10- A/An .... does a job without being paid.
a patient b engineer c volunteer d adult

5-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

1) I'm very proud <u>to</u> my father. (........................)
2) Did he <u>used</u> to study hard? (........................)
3) Aya won a <u>price</u> for her school project. (........................)
4) He didn't <u>used</u> to come late (........................)
5) She is used to <u>cook</u> our lunch (........................)

Writing

6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(Rubbish collectors)

....
....
....
....
....



Unit 4 in brief Into the past

Important vocabulary

ancient	قديم	necklace	قلادة / عقد
arch	قنطرة	needle	مسلة
awesome	رائع	papyrus	ورق البردي
bowl	سلطانية	pharaoh	فرعون
castle	قلعة	pollution	تلوث
clay	صلصال	pot	أناء
coin	عملة معدنية	pyramid	هرم
damage	يدمر	ring	خاتم
debate	جدال / مناقشة	ruins	بقايا
entrance	مدخل	stadium	ستاد
environment	البيئة	statue	تمثال
facts	حقائق	subheading	عنوان فرعي
figure	تمثال	temple	معبد
heading	عنوان رئيسي	theatre	مسرح
historic	تاريخي	tools	أدوات
local	محلي	tourists	السياح
mask	قناع	vase	فازة
mosque	مسجد	view	منظر طبيعي
museum	متحف	wood	خشب

Prepositions and expressions

necessary to.....	من الضروري ان	tell about	يتكلم عن
put ... in	يضع في / بداخل	protect from	يحمي من
interested in	مهتم ب....	get a guide	يتجول برفقة مرشد
Sitting on	يجلس على	Follow ... across	يتتبعه ...عبر
Behave well	يتصرف جيدا	Made of	مصنوع من (لم يتغير شكل المادة)
Pay for	يدفع ل...	Made from	مصنوع من (تغير شكل المادة)

Language Notes

Enjoy- Like -Love

- **enjoy – like – love + v.ing** يحب (يحب فعل شيئ عموما كـ عادة)
- **enjoy – like – love + to+ مصدر** يحب (يحب فعل شيئ علي وجه الخصوص وليس دائما)

Too -Very

- **Too** جدا (تفيد النفي وصعوبة اتمام الحدث)
- **Very** جدا (تفيد صعوبة ولكن يمكن اتمام الحدث)







EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You must have a .... to get to enter the cinema.
   a book b booklet c ticket d note
2. A.................................. is a structure with a curved top and straight sides
   a gun b arch c sword d knife
3. It's .... to have a goal in your life.
   a necessary b unnecessary c hard d difficult
4. This text is .... the Great Pyramid.
   a about b for c at d by
5. A.................................. is A building in which Muslim worship.
   a Mosque b castle c museum d church
6. I'm Interested .... reading novels.
   a in b for c at d by
7. The teacher asked us to write a.................................. of our daily routine.
   a describe b inspire c description d prescribe
8. We went on a school .... last Friday.
   a day b week c flight d trip
9. A......is a very large stone building built in the past , that was easily to defend against attack.
   a Mosque b castle c museum d hotel
10. Zeina arrived .... school late.
    a in b for c at d by
11. I think it isn't .... to lift this box. It's too heavy.
    a lazy b easy c hard d difficult
12. A................is building where important cultural historical objects are kept and shown
    a Mosque b castle c museum d hotel
13. My sister likes visiting.................................. places.
    a historical b history c historian d historic
14. I will ask the architect to design a nice .... in the entrance of my garden .
    a arch b archer c archaeology d art
15. When I go to Cairo , I always admire visiting Salah al-Din 's................and its towers .
    a temple b museum c castle d statue
16. The grand Egyptian .... will attract a lot of tourists from all over the world
    a temple b museum c castle d statue



17. When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful……………………………

a allocation b sight c view d review

18. They didn't complete this building at all. These……………… are thousands of years old.

a ruins b arches c entrances d castles

19. This old castle……………………………… to the Romans times.

a gets b dates c goes d jumps

20. Many people used……………………………… to help them paint around their eyes.

a cupboards b beds c TVs d mirrors

21. The paint helped to protect their eyes……………………the sun and kept away insects.

a for b from c in d at

22. Money from tourism helps to pay……………………local people to look after the stones.

a for b from c in d at

23. Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like………………………………

a sunset b sunrise c senet d senate

24. Tourists can visit stones, but they must not ……………………………… them.

a damage b imagine c protect d help

25. They tell us ……………………………… the people who made them and how they lived.

a for b from c about d at

26. people got into the bowl and used their………………………………to mix the ingredients.

a foot b feet c hands d legs

27. The Ancient Egyptians used ……………………………… and bowls for making food.

a pots b plates c dishes d cups

28. You ……………………………… look right and left before you cross the road.

a must b mustn't c don't have to d shouldn't

29. ………………from the past can help us to understand What life was like many years ago .

a Objects b Stones c Cups d Squares

30. Our national ……………………………… team achieved good results in the world cup .

a football b handball c volleyball d basketball

31. I am proud ……………………………… my father .He is my hero

a in b off c of d at

32. You should ……………………………… politely with your friends and with strangers.

a behave b behalf c behaviour d see

33. There are two-lion statue at the ……………………………… of Kasr Elnil bridge .

a enter b entering c entrance d enters

34. The police are working hard to remove the ……………………………… of the earthquake .

a ruins b rocks c rivers d stones

35. Tourists need a .... to give them information about the sites
a teacher b doctor c guide d nurse

36. The carpenter used many .... to repair the broken furniture .
a tools b towels c tart d fuel

37. There was a................................... on TV about helping the environment.
a debate b date c carpet d lamp

38. ....is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.
a Infection b illness c Pollution d Tourism

39. Some people are careless as they................................... rubbish in historic places.
a drop b make c lend d mix

40. Some people think that tourists can................................... important places.
a attack b attract c damage d debate

41. A century is a period of .... years.
a 10 b 20 c 100 d 1000

42. My sister works in a big................................... that organises holidays.
a fort b castle c palace d company

43. Muhammad Ali was the.................of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.
a ruler b roller c baker d waiter

44. You................................... forget to do your homework regularly.
a must to b must c mustn't to d mustn't

45. Muslims go to .... every day to pray .
a mosque b museum c castle d statue

46. Last winter we went to Luxor and visited its beautiful ....
a temples b houses c seas d roads

47. The trip was................................... It was amazing.
a scary b pleased c awesome d boring

48. We call something is................................... when it is very old.
a new b modern c patient d ancient

49. In the past, people built................................... to watch their favourite sports.
a museums b mosques c stadiums d theatres

50. We bought a new house with a large...................................
a entrance b wall c ruin d castle

Grammar in brief

The past simple الماضي البسيط

❑ التكوين

فاعل + فعل + d / ed / ied

EX Ali played football. علي لعب الكرة

❑ ملاحظات

- جميع الافعال يضاف إليها (ed) ما عدا

1- الفعل الذى ينتهى بـ (e) يضاف إليه (d)

2- الفعل الذى ينتهى بـ (Y) قبلها حرف ساكن تقلب إلى(ied)

❑ النفي

الفاعل + didn't + المصدر

EX Ali didn't play football. (خلي بالك اننا حذفنا ed يعني الفعل بيرجع لأصله ف النفي)

❑ السؤال

1-السؤال بـ (هل ...) ؟

Did + الفاعل + مصدر ?

EX Did you watch the match? هل شاهدت المباراة؟

-Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

2-السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام ...) ؟

اداة استفهام + did + مفرد + مصدر ?

EX When did you visit The Tower? متي زرت البرج ؟

❑ الكلمات الدالة

Yesterda أ مس / last الماضي / once ذات مرة / in the past الماضي \فـ أي تاريخ قديم

خلي بالك

- الفعل (were /was) فعل ماضي بسيط من الأفعال الشاذة ⬅ ⬅

EX I was at the zoo yesterday.

- النفي بتاعه بيكون (wasn't / weren't)

EX I wasn't at the zoo yesterday.

- السؤال بنعكس وخلي بالك ان (I was) بتتحول في السؤال لـ (Were you) بمعني (هل كنت..؟)

EX Were you at the zoo yesterday?

-Yes, I was.

– No, I wasn't.

Past continuous الماضي المستمر

- نيجي بقي للماضي المستمر ,,, يعني ايه ماضي مستمر ؟؟؟

- شوف الفرق بين الجملتين دول 1-انا لعبت امبارح . 2-انا كنت بلعب امبارح.

- ايه الفرق بين الجملتين ؟ ,,, بص ياسيدي وياستي بردوا ,,,,

- الجملة الأولي بتقولك الحدث بصورة مباشرة , وده اللي هو الماضي البسيط ,,, زي ما تقول (انا أكلت - شربت - نمت..)

- اما الجملة التانية بتوصفلك الحدث اللي كنت بتعمله وده بنسميه الماضي المستمر ,,,

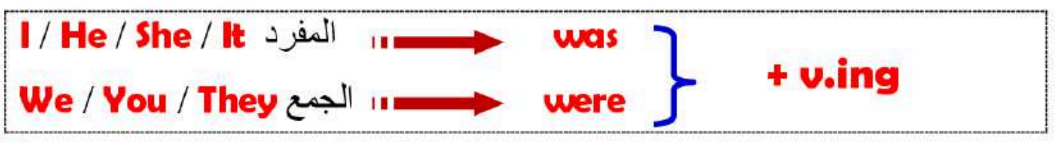
(كنت باكل / كنت بشرب / كنت نايم..)

- خلي بالك ان: الماضي المستمر ده مش بينفع مع كل الافعال , يعني فيه افعال لازم تيجي ماضي بسيط متنفعش تبقي مستمر لأنها بتتم علي مرة واحده , زي مثلا (يسجل هدف – يقع – يتعطل .....)

يعني مثلا مينفعش نقول (انا كنت بقع) انما نقول (انا وقعت)

حاجه كمان ان الماضي المستمر بنستخدمه لما نحدد الوقت بالظبط امتي يعني اقول (امبارح الساعه 7 كنت نايم)

يعني هو تعريفه انه (حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين من الماضي وانتهي)تعالي نشوف بيتعمل ازاي



EX I was playing at 7 p.m. yesterday

طيب لو عايزين ننفيه بنستخدم (not) بعد (was / were)

1- لو جاء الماضي المستمر مع الماضي البسيط فـ كده بنتكلم علي حدث كان مستمرا (مستمر) وحدث فعل أخر(بسيط) يعني حدث هذا الفعل اثناء حدوث الفعل المستمر , وقد يقطعه أو لا يقطعه يعني مثلا (أثناء ما كنت بتفرج ع الفيلم , النور قطع) هنا فيه تعطيل , أو (أثناء ما كنت بتفرج علي الماتش , بابا وصل)

هنا مفيش تعطيل ولا حاجه ,, المهم لما حدث يحصل ويتم أثناء حدوث فعل أخر يبقي اللي كان شغال ده هيبقي (المستمر) واللي حصل أثناءه ده (البسيط) وهيجوا بالشكل ده.

While / As / Just as أثناء → ماضي بسيط + ماضي مستمر

EX While I was watching the film, the light went out.

طيب لو حبينا نخلي الرابط في نص الجملتين , فـ الجملة اللي بعد الرابط بتفضل بعده مباشرة و التانية بتيجي قبله

ماضي بسيط	← while / as / just as →	ماضي مستمر

EX The light went out while I was watching the film.

ماضي بسيط	← because لأن →	ماضي مستمر

EX I didn't answer you because I was sleeping.



When عندما ⟵	ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط

EX When the bell rang, I was sleeping.

ماضي مستمر ⟵	when	⟶ ماضي بسيط

EX I was sleeping when the bell rang.

2- في حالة حدثين كانا يحدثان في وقت واحد (لا يوجد اي تعطيل) يعني مثلا

(أثناء ما كنت بتفرج ع الفيلم, أختي كانت بتطبخ) هنا الاتنين شغالين فـ وقت واحد

While / As / Just as أثناء	ماضي مستمر + ماضي مستمر

EX While I was watching the film, she was cooking.

3-في حالة بقي حدثين حدثوا ورا بعض ع طول (يعني اقول لما الاستاذ دخل الفصل الطلبه وقفت)

When عندما ⟵	ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط

EX When the teacher entered the class, the student stood up.

يبقي قبل ماتختار لازم تشوف الاحداث بتقطع بعضها ولا كانت فـ وقت واحد ولا ورا بعض ,,

During اثناء /خلال --------- ماضي بسيط + اسم

EX During the party ,I met my friend Manal

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Khaled .... to the museum last month.
   a go — b will go — c goes — d went
2. When.................................. Omer's birthday?
   a do — b did — c was — d does
3. Zeina.................................. TV an hour ago.
   a watched — b watch — c are watching — d will watch
4. My friend Ali went.................................. yesterday.
   a swim — b swam — c swims — d swimming
5. What did Omer.................................. when he arrived?
   a did — b doing — c does — d do
6. How did Salwa.................................. when she saw the lion yesterday?
   a feel — b felt — c feels — d feeling
7. Radwa wrote the e-mail..................................
   a now — b last week — c tomorrow — d next





8. Roquia .... born in 2017.

a was b are c did d do

9. When Ahmed was young, He always................................ football.

a play b plays c playing d played

10. .... you ready for the exam last week?

a Did b Were c Do d Are

11. How did you go to school? – I .... by car.

a go b going c will go d went

12. No, Abeer didn't................................ Aswan last year.

a visit b visited c go d went

13. When did you have your last math lesson? – We .... it at 2 o'clock.

a had b have c will have d has

14. The ship sank because there................................ a terrible storm.

a are b is c was d were

15. How................................ your weekend?

a did b does c was d do

16. Salah El- Din Al- Ayouby................................ the citadel to protect Cairo.

a build b is building c built d has built

17. Yesterday, I .... my homework with my sister.

a did b do c done d doing

18. When did you .... your friends ?

a see b saw c seeing d seen

19. Did you watch the film last night ? No , I................................

a don't b did c didn't d watch

20. What time .... you play computer games last night ?

a did b was c does d do

21. When I was younger, I .... to live with my grandma.

a going b go c gone d went

22. They .... attend the conference last month.

a won't b didn't c wasn't d don't

23. Once , there .... a bridge here , Gezira Bridge.

a was b is c were d are

24. Building the citadel began in 1176 and .... in 1184.

a finish b finished c finishing d finishes

25. We had lunch at the restaurant and the food .... delicious.

a is b are c were d was

26. Omar was playing basketball when he.................................. his knee.

a hurting b hurt c was hurting d is hurting

27. My mobile rang while I .... my homework.

a do b does c did d was doing

28. He was driving to work when the accident..................................

a will happen b happened c happens d happen

29. While.................................. my homework, I slept.

a was doing b were doing c did d doing

30. What were you.................................. yesterday morning?

a do b did c doing d was doing

31. Were you sleeping when the clock.................................. off?

a go b goes c going d went

32. Was it.................................. when you left school?

a rain b rains c rained d raining

33. My friends.................................. to cinema last Sunday to watch a nice movie.

a go b went c going d was go

34. Last night, I.................................. in my room when my mother opened the door.

a sleep b sleeping c was sleeping d slept

35. What.................................. when the accident happened?

a were you doing b you were doing c did you doing d you did doing

36. I..................................down the street when the car suddenly crashed against the tree.

a walked b was walking c walking d walk

37. I .... my lunch when the phone rang.

a have eaten b was eating c has eaten d ate

38. What.................................. when you heard the explosion ?

a were they doing b are they doing c did they use to do d did they do

39. As I.................................. for tomorrow's trip, I fell down and hurt my leg.

a prepare b prepared c was preparing d preparing

40. I and my friends didn't play because it..................................

a rained b was raining c rains d raining

41. While she was studying, her brother.................................. TV.

a watched b was watching c watch d watches



42. Yara wasn't eating when her father..................................

a call b calls c calling d called

43. .... he arrived, they were having lunch.

a While b When c During d On

44. When she visited her uncle, he was..................................

a swim b swam c swims d swimming

45. As he was carrying the vase, he .... it on the floor.

a drops b was dropping c had dropped d dropped

46. My sister.................................. the room while I was making tea.

a cleaned b was cleaning c is cleaning d cleans

47. .... my holiday, I visited many places .

a When b While c During d Where

48. Last summer holiday, my friends and I.................................. many Moroccan cities.

a visit b visiting c was visited d visited

49. Yesterday, I .... television while my father was reading a book.

a was watching b watched c watch d watches

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1. While he (took) a bath, his friend arrived. (......................)
2. While he was sleeping, his sister (watch) TV. (......................)
3. My mobile (ring) while I was doing my homework. (......................)
4. He was walking when he(see)the accident. (......................)
5. While was sleeping, I had a bad dream. (......................)
6. Where were you (have) lunch? (......................)
7. (While) the match, Ronaldo scored a goal. (......................)
8. When he was young, he sometimes (watches)TV. (......................)
9. Where did they (lived)? (......................)
10. He didn't (helped) me with my homework. (......................)
11. He (born) in 2010. Now he is ten years old. (......................)
12. We (visit)the museum 4 weeks ago. (......................)
13. I (have) breakfast with them 15 minutes ago. (......................)

Complete the dialogue:

Sarah is asking Roquia about the time she is going shopping.

Sarah : When are you going shopping, Roqia ?

Roquia : I am(1) .... shopping next Sunday.

Sarah : (2) .... will you go with?

Roquia : My mum, Mona.

Sarah : (3) .... do you usually go shopping ?

Roquia : (4) .... taxi.

Salma meets Amal, a new girl in the class.

Salma : Hello, Amal! How can I (1) .... you ?

Amal : May you give me a (2) .... of our school ?

Salma : With pleasure.

Amal : How (3) .... will it take to know our class?

Salma : Only five minutes. It is at the (4) .... of the first floor.

Amal : Thanks.

Ahmed and Ola are talking about exams.

Ahmed : Are you (1) .... for today's exams?

Ola : Yes,I am(2) .... about you ?

Ahmed : Of course I revised all the units.

Ola : Really! What about the (3) .... ?

Ahmed : The Reader ? I did, too. It's a very interesting story.

Ola : I hope we will (4) .... in the English exam.

Test based on unit 4

Listening

1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1) How was Ali's holiday?
a bad　b sad　c great　d boring
2) Where did Ali go on holiday?
a Italy　b France　c Iraq　d Jordan
3) How did he travel?
a on a snowmobile　b by plane　c by ship　d on foot
4) Where did he stay?
a in a flat　b in an attic　c in a house　d on a ship

Language Functions

2- Complete the following dialogue :

Ali meets a tourist and asks him some questions.

Ali : Hello, I'm pleased to meet you.
Tourist : I'm pleased to meet you, too.
Ali : Where do you (1) ....from ?
Tourist : I come from England.
Ali : It is your first visit to Egypt.
Tourist : (2) ....I visited Egypt two years ago.
Ali : (3) ....are you going to stay here ?
Tourist : Two weeks.
Ali : Which places are you going to visit ?
Tourist : (4) ....at Giza and the Valley of the Kings in Luxor.

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A. Teacher : Who built the Citadel in Cairo ?
Mona : ....
Teacher : He is a great leader.

B. Esraa : ....?
Nora: King Ptolemy built it in about 283 BCE.
Esraa: I hope I will visit it soon .

Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

At school we learn many subject . My favourite school subject is English . We learn it to be able to speak to tourists who come to Egypt . We also learn it to read English books and magazines . Most names of machines and medicines are written in English We also learn history and geography to know something about the world around us we learn Arabic to know our language very well .

❒ ***A- Answer the following question.***

1) Can you read names of medicines ? why ?
....
2) What's your favourite subject ?
....





3) Is learning English able us to speak to tourists ?

....

❒ ***Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:***

4) We learn .... because it's our first language .
a English b geography c Arabic d history

5) At school we learn many .... subjects .
a bad b useful c horrible d short

6) Most names of machines and medicines are written in ....
a English b Arabic c French d Spanish

Vocabulary and Structure

4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1) If you................................... a building, you go into it.
a damage b enter c leave d walk

2) People usually build ....around gardens or between the rooms of a building.
a statues b stairs c walls d corridors

3) A................................... is a person who goes to many places.
a tablet b truck c tower d traveller

4) There's a beautiful .... from the top of the mountain.
a review b view c preview d interview

5) I didn't .... to the museum last week .
a go b went c gone d going

6) My sister .... me a nice jacket yesterday .
a buys b bought c buy d buying

7) King Fuad built Muntazah ....
a please b Place c plus d Palace

8) I'm so sorry to .... you, but did King Abbas build it ?
a inter b interrupt c entertainment d internet

9) Building the citadel began in 1176 and .... in 1184.
a finish b finished c finishing d finishes

10) We had lunch at the restaurant and the food .... delicious.
a is b are c were d was

5.Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

1) Last night , I <u>have</u> a very good night's sleep. (.........................)
2) When you <u>coming</u> I was having a shower. (.........................)
3) In the evenings, I like to go out and walk on the <u>platform</u>. (.........................)
4) Thousand of <u>towers</u> comes to Egypt every year. (.........................)

Writing

6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(What you must and mustn't do)

....
....
....
....
....



Unit 5 in brief Helping you, helping me

Important vocabulary

apartment \flat	شقة	donation	تبرع
share	يشارك	princess	اميرة
blog	مدونة الكترونية	stranger	غريب
advertisement	اعلان	generous	كريم
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	disabled	معاق
lift	مصعد-يرفع	random	عشوائي
laboratory	معمل	volunteer	متطوع
behave	يتصرف	fantastic	رائع
tidy	يرتب	helpful	متعاون
smile	يبتسم	polite	مؤدب
messy	فوضي	lucky	محظوظ
tips	نصائح	seat	مقعد ثابت
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	produce	ينتج
sailor	بحار	kindness	طيبة-عطف
businesswoman	سيدة اعمال	perhaps	ربما
head teacher	ناظر	community	مجتمع
servant	خادم	stairs	سلالم
thief	لص	donate	يتبرع
beggar	شحات	trainer	مدرب

Prepositions and expressions

put away	يضع شيء في مكانة	give away	يتبرع
wash up	يغسل الاطباق	look for	يبحث عن
cruel to	قاسي مع	surprised about	مندهش بشأن
get up	يستيقظ	kind to	طيب مع
for no reason	بلا سبب/ بدون سبب	make the bed	يرتب السرير
look after babies	يعتني بالأطفال	do kind things	يفعل أشياء طيبة
take out the rubbish	يخرج الزبالة	care about	يعتني ب.....
stay in bed	يبقى في الفراش	tidy up	يرتب المنزل
pick up	يلتقط / يقطف	try to	يحاول أن

Language Notes

Special - Private

- Special خاص / مميز
- Private خاص (شخصي الاستخدام)





EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My sister always ....cooking to help my mother .

a makes b does c takes d gives

2. You shouldn't................................ .The baby is asleep .

a shout b shouts c shouted d shouting

3. My mother always asks me to..................................my room when it is dirty.

a neat b tidy c miss d messy

4. Disabled and old people can't use the stairs .they uses the..................................

a left b lift c leaves d let

5. Luckily, there is only one ....left on that flight .

a chair b seat c sofa d bed

6. We should always ....money to charities to help the poor .

a lend b borrow c donate d withdraw

7. We should look ....the birds and animals that we keep.

a after b for c to d up

8. The computer gave us a ....number or unexpected one .

a planned b systematic c random d usual

9. Omer always cleans beaches and picks ....rubbish .

a out b up c for d with

10. My neighbour is..................................so he always uses a wheelchair .

a able b sound c healthy d disabled

11. This baby is hungry, you must ....him .

a feed b eat c carry d wash

12. I love football. It's my ....sport .

a favour b ugly c rude d favourite

13. People should wait to take ....to get on the metro.

a turns b off c up d in

14. A woman looks ....her baby, he is lost .

a for b after c forward d at

15. My brother always puts his clothes.................................. He is well-organized.

a away b in c up d down

16. If the bin is full , take the rubbish.................................

a in b on c out d off

17. The girl is very sad because she has lost her ....of money.

a vase b bucket c pocket d purse

18. He is a cheerful person .He always ....at other people.

a frowns b smiles c cries d insults

19. Today, you have to do the ....after lunch .

a washing up b wash up c clean d tidy up

20. My daughter is shy in front of ....

a friends b brothers c sisters d strangers

21. The rich should be kind ....the poor .

a at b to c for d with

22. Roquia is always making a ....in the kitchen- she is a messy girl .

a tidy b honest c mess d kind

23. Don't let the bins be................................., please take out the rubbish .

a empty b free c fill d full

24. My father works ....a teacher .

a like b such as c for example d as

25. Take the ....it's faster than using the stairs .

a left b leaves c lift d leaf

26. ....always ask people for money .

a Tourists b Bakers c Masters d Beggars

27. When does this book come.................................?

a on b off c out d into

28. Be kind and polite ....others .

a on b to c at d with

29. Our mother ordered us to.................................well .

a make b do c behave d play

30. We buy bread at the.................................

a grocer's b greengrocer's c butcher's d baker's

31. I am ....at your bad behaviour .

a surprised b surprising c exciting d amazing

32. Charities use the money to help ....People .

a rich b healthy c wealthy d poor

33. Our class decided to ....one act of kindness every day.

a make b do c play d give

34. Omer..................................a bedroom with his brother .

a share b sell c divide d build

35. I usually ask my sister to tidy..................................our room before going to bed .

a on b up c for d at

36. We've got science in the ....

a library b restaurant c cafe d laboratory

37. I go to the cinema ....a month .

a twice b one c three d two

38. I'm sorry to hear that my friend was ....after the accident.

a able b unable c disabled d disability

39. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is..................................

a ugly b bad c rude d fantastic

40. I'm .... I want to wear something heavy .

a hungry b cold c hot d thirsty

41. We ....money to charities .

a lend b borrow c make d donate

42. The ....is the king's daughter .

a miss b princess c queen d madam

43. ....my way home, I met an old friend .

a In b On c At d With

44. How often were you asked for money from street ....?

a beggars b men c women d children

45. I'm ....,I`m looking for something to eat

a angry b hungry c thirsty d cold

46. This old man is kind. He gave me a big ....

a smell b smiled c smelled d smile

47. the..................................means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.

a country b community c distance d village

48. We shouldn't be ....to the weak or disabled

a kind b polite c cruel d tidy

49. Abeer is a teenager ,she can`t ....such an important decision.

a do b fake c make d take





Grammar in brief

The Relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل

Who

فعل + فاعل/ فعل + **Who** + عاقل (فاعل – مفعول)

الذى / التى للعاقل

EX The boy who is playing, is my brother.

which

فعل + فاعل/ فعل + **which** + غير عاقل

الذى / التي / اللذين لغير للعاقل

EX She bought a dress ,which doesn't fit her

- ينفع نستخدم **(** that **)** بدلاً من (who / which) يعني للعاقل وغير العاقل بس مش بيجي قبلها فواصل

EX The tree that he cut was young .

Whose

تحل محل ضمائر الملكية أو ('s) الملكية

اسم مملوك + **Whose** + اسم مالك (عاقل /غير عاقل)

اللي للملكية

EX I saw the man whose car was broke down.

Where

حيث للمكان (لا يأتي معها حرف جر نهائيا لا قبلها ولا بعدها) **where** + اسم مكان

EX This is the house where I live.

خلي بالك مش اي اسم انت عارف انه اسم مكان , يكون جاي اسم مكان ممكن يكون غير عاقل فقط زي مثلا

-This is our house. My father bought it last year.

هنا المنزل اللي ابويا اشتراه السنه اللي فاتت, فـ المنزل هنا جاي غير عاقل بس مش مكان , فـ بنستخدم معاه فقط (which)

-This is our house which my father bought last year.

الخلاصة : اذا كانت الجملة بعد ضمير الوصل تصف ما يحدث في المكان فهو اسم مكان وفي نفس الوقت غير عاقل زي مثلا (المصنع حيث يعمل ابي.) اما اذا كانت الجملة تصف المكان فقط فـ هو غير عاقل (المصنع الذي تم بناءه عام 2000).

When

عندما للزمان (لا يأتي معها حرف جر نهائيا لا قبلها ولا بعدها) **when** + اسم زمان

EX Friday is the day when we don't go to school.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (*which*) مع اسم المكان والزمان ولكن يأتي معها حرف جر.
وخلي بالك كمان ان حرف الجر لازم يتناسب مع الفعل أو الاسم الموجود فـ الجملة.

EX Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.



Grammar in brief

Expressing obligation and Advice

التعبير عن الالزام والنصيحة

(يجب أن) المصدر + **must** + فاعل

EX I must invite my friends.

- وفي حالة النفي بنستخدم (mustn't) بمعني (ممنوع / لا يجب أن) وإلا هيكون فيه نتائج سلبية

EX You mustn't park here as it's a " No parking area"

- وفي حالة السؤال بتيجي بالشكل ده

هل يجب أن ...؟ **?** مصدر + فاعل + **Must**

EX Must I do homework tonight?

نيجي لـ تاني حاجه ممكن نستخدمها وهي (has to – have to)

- ودي بنستخدمها مع الشئ المضطرين نعمله غصب عنا , (مفروض عليك من الخارج) وبتيجي بالشكل ده

(يجب أن) المصدر + **has to** + فاعل مفرد

(يجب أن) المصدر + **have to** + I / فاعل جمع

EX You have to show your identity when you come.

has to / have to = It's necessary to + مصدر (من الضروري أن)

EX It`s necessary to study hard for your exams.

- وفي حالة عدم الضرورة (النفي) نستخدم

مفرد ➡ **doesn't have to**

جمع / I ➡ **don't have to**

It's not necessary

- مش ضروري (يعني ممكن أعمله وممكن لأ ..) بدون أي ضرر

EX You don't have to buy a new pen. I have an extra one.

EX It`s not necessary to buy a new pen. I have an extra one.

- وفي حالة السؤال بتيجي بالشكل ده

هل يجب أن ...؟ **?** مصدر + **have to** + فاعل + **Does / Do**

Is it necessary to + مصدر **?**

EX Do I have to have a car license ? Yes, you do.

- وفي حالة النصيحة نستخدم

(ينبغي أن) المصدر + **should** + فاعل (فـ الغالب **You**)

EX You should study hard.

طبعا الفرق بين الإلزام والنصيحة مش كبير ولكن النصيحة ليس فيها إجبار علي الإطلاق

النفي

المصدر + **shouldn't** + فاعل

EX You shouldn't watch too much T.V.







EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- E-mails................................advertise things are called spam.
a who b where c which d whose

2- This is the flat................................they live.
a where b which c whose d whom

3- This is the flat................................they bought.
a where b which c whose d whom

4- He gave me all the money................................he had.
a where b which c whose d that

5- Cairo is the city in................................he lives.
a where b whom c who d which

6- Mr. Mohamed Omar, ...lives next door, is an English teacher.
a that b who c whose d where

7- We did an experiment................................went wrong.
a who b which c whom d whose

8- The scientist................................discovered the Femto Second was Dr Zewail.
a who b which c when d where

9- The film................................I saw last night was great.
a that b who c whose d where

10- He is the best footballer................................I have ever seen.
a that b who c whose d where

11- The woman, ...is talking to the man, is the manager.
a which b whose c who d when

12- She is the girl................................father is a doctor.
a which b whose c who d when

13- We went to Cairo................................we visited my granddad.
a who b whose c where d which

14- Is there a time................................we can talk about this?
a whose b where c who d when

15- A person................................doesn't have a mobile is hard to contact.
a who b whose c when d which

16- My neighbour................................is a teacher, sometimes helps me with my English.
a whose b who c which d where



17- The museum, ...is near our school, is always busy in the afternoon.
a whose b who c which d where

18- Luxor, ...thousands of tourists stay every year, is near the Nile
a whose b who c which d where

19- My brother, ...muscles are very strong, carried the heavy bags.
a whose b who c which d where

20- The professor, ...works at the university, knows everything about maths.
a whose b who c which d where

21- English..................................all students study at school is a very important subject.
a whose b who c which d where

22- Ali went to school in his village, ...his father made equipment for horses.
a whose b who c that d where

23- Ahmed, ...father is ill, is really sad.
a whose b who c which d that

24- Mr Mohamed Abd El-Tawab, ...is a kind manager, is respected by all.
a whose b who c which d that

25- There is also a stadium.................................you can watch horse riding.
a who b which c where d that

26- I..................................wear glasses because I can't see very well.
a mustn't b don't have to c have to d shouldn't

27- Good students..................................to take private lessons.
a won't b haven't c shouldn't d don't have

28- ....Zeina have to get up early?
a Are b Is c Do d Does

29- My father ....get up at six o'clock every day to go to work . SB
a don't have to b have to c doesn't have to d has to

30- When you get on the bus, you ....buy a ticket. SB
a have to b doesn't have to c don't have to d has to

31- At the weekends, I ....get up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. SB
a doesn't have to b hast to c don't have to d have to

32- Everyone ....do a random act of kindness sometimes. WB
a should b shouldn't c have to d has to

33- You ....pass your exams to go to university. WB
a doesn't have to b don't have to c have to d should

34- You ....do your homework at the same time every day. WB

a shouldn't b don't have to c have to d has to

35- You ....show your passport when you leave the country . WB

a have to b has to c shouldn't d needn't

36- You ....look right and left before you cross the road.

a must b mustn't c don't have to d shouldn't

37- At school, you..................................listen to your teacher.

a have b must c mustn't d has to

38- This is a valuable book. you..................................keep it and mustn't lose it.

a must b mustn't c shouldn't d haven't

39- We..................................cook more, there's enough food.

a have to b don't have to c has to d should

40- I don t like that uniform, but I..................................wear it at work.

a don't have to b shouldn't c have to d mustn't

41- She's always tired. She..................................go to bed late every night.

a shouldn't b should c don't have to d have to

42- You..................................remember to close the windows when you leave the house.

a mustn't b don't have to c should d has to

43- You..................................eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.

a must b have to c don't have to d shouldn't

44- You ....drink water from the river. It's not clean.

a doesn't have to b have to c has to d mustn't

45- We..................................do the housework. Our mother is ill.

a must b mustn't c shouldn't d have

46- This was a nice evening. We must..................................again.

a meet b meeting c met d to meet

47- You..................................brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth.

a have to b don't have to c mustn't d must

48- You..................................forget to do your homework regularly.

a must to b must c mustn't to d mustn't

49- You..................................be kind to your friends.

a mustn't b must c must never d shouldn't

50- It's late. You..................................never make so much noise.

a mustn't b must c shouldn't d don't



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

1. At our school we haven't to wear a uniform. (.....................)
2. You mustn't study hard if you want to pass your exams. (.....................)
3. Does the boys have to get up early? (.....................)
4. You doesn't have to shout. I can hear you. (.....................)
5. We have leave now or we'll miss the plane. (.....................)
6. You haven't to go to school today. It's Friday. (.....................)
7. You mustn't using a mobile phone in class. (.....................)
8. Students and teachers must are polite to each other. (.....................)
9. I don't know what I shouldn't do with my old clothes. (.....................)
10. Have you to wear special clothes for your sports class? (.....................)
11. 2018 was the year where Roquia was born. (.....................)
12. We won the match whose we played yesterday. (.....................)
13. Have you seen the man who hair is brown? (.....................)
14. He is the tallest boy who I have ever met. (.....................)
15. What do you think of the film who we saw yesterday? (.....................)
16. Giza is the city in where we stay. (.....................)
17. This is the house where he sold. (.....................)

Complete the dialogue:

Radwa : Yara, what do you think we should do?
Yara : I don't know. (1) .... watch TV.
Radwa : That's a (2) .... idea. We're going shopping later, so I think you should rest for a while.
Yara : I don't think I want to go anywhere.
Radwa : What do you (3) ....? I thought you said we were going shopping.
Yara : I know, but I changed my mind. I'm too tired.
Radwa : Well, when (4) .... you think we'll go?
Yara : Maybe tonight.
Radwa : OK, (5) .... I use your phone?
Yara : Certainly. Here you are.

Ali and Omer are discussing about the next weekend

Ali : (1) .... do you think we should go next weekend ?
Omer : (2) .... going to the cinema ?
Ali : I don't like watching films outside home.
Omer : We(3) .... play football
Ali : I can't because my foot hurts.
Omer : What do you think we(4) .... do
Ali : Why(5) .... we go to the beach.
Omer : That's a good idea.

Test based on unit 5

Listening

1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1- What kind of person are the writer and her sister ?

a polite | b rude | c ugly | d messy

2- What do they usually do before sleeping?

a clap | b sing | c dance | d tidy up

3- How many times do they take out rubbish?

a once | b twice | c three times | d four times

4- Where do they take out rubbish ? in ....

a baskets | b pots | c bags | d bins

Language Functions

2- Complete the following dialogue :

Maha : Where did you go last Friday ?
Fatma : I didn't (1) ....
Maha : Why did you stay at home ?
Fatma : I was helping (2) ....
Maha : What did you (3) ....?
Fatma : I washed all my (4) ....
Maha : What did you do at night ?
Fatma : I watched (5) ....

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A) Habiba : Is there any water in that bottle?
Mother : ....
B) Dina : ....?
Ramzy: I'd like falafel.

Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

Football is the most popular game in the world . Football was played in England for many years , but there were no rules . In 1863, the first rules for football were written to make the game safer . The most famous player in history is Pele . He is a Brazilian player .When he was a boy , he used to play for hours in the street with his friends . When he was 17 , he played for his country in the world cup . In 1961, he scored one of the best goals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why were rules written for football ?

....

2- When did Pele play for his country

....

3- What is Pele's nationality?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The first rules for football were written in...................................

a 1961 | b 1798 | c 1967 | d 1863

5- Pele was a.................................player .

a lazy b bad c clever d well

6- ....is the most popular game in the world .

a Football b Basketball c Volleyball d Handball

Vocabulary and Structure

4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- Our bedroom is always untidy because we are ....

a kind b polite c cruel d messy

2- The museum is free. You ....pay to get in .

a have to b don't have to c doesn't have to d has to

3- The lighthouse had mirrors ....reflected the light from oil lamps .

a who b where c which d when

4- My parents always ....money to charities which help disabled people .

a borrow b steal c lend d donate

5- Do you know the name of the man ....wrote Hamlet ?

a which b who c that d where

6- Please, put ....all your clothes in the usual place .

a away b up c out d on

7- It's important for us to help people in our ....

a common b community c comma d companion

8- Who ....you breakfast every morning ?

a does b gives c makes d plays

9- Famous people should work ....a charity .

a on b out c in d for

10- Beggars usually ask people for ....to buy their needs.

a advice b money c bread d food

5-Complete the sentences with the correct form:

1- Last year, I went to Paris which I stayed for a weak. (.....................)

2- The policeman which I spoke to was very polite. (.....................)

3- That is the hotel where we used to stay at every summer. (.....................)

4- Mary walks as if she were a prince . (.....................)

Writing

6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(A sport you really like)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 6 in brief Different environments

Important vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	bar chart	رسم بياني شريطي
canal	قناة	cause	يسبب
drought	جفاف	changing world	العالم المتغير
electric	كهربائي	climate change	تغيرات المناخ
environment	البيئة	electricity	الكهرباء
wood	خشب/غابة	green energy	طاقة نظيفة
mountain	جبل	remind	يذكر
report	تقرير	pray	يصلي
rubbish	قمامة	title	لقب
black honey	عسل اسود	east	الشرق
cotton	قطن	west	الغرب
delicious	لذيذ	north	الشمال
introduce	يقدم	south	الجنوب
locate	يحدد موقع	damage	يتلف
monuments	آثار	podcast	بث اذاعي
mosque	مسجد	collect	يجمع
diagram	شكل توضيحي – رسم بياني	city centre	وسط المدينة
burn	يحرق	event	حدث
reuse	يعيد استخدام	line graph	رسم بياني خطي
solution	حل	melt	يذوب
solve	يحل	presentation	مقدمه
vote	يصوت	recycle	يعيد تدوير
coloured	ملون	serious	خطير – جاد
weather	طقس	temperature	درجة الحرارة
warm	دافئ	position	وضع

Prepositions and expressions

Famous for / known for	مشهور ب	Protect from	يحمي من
Stop damaging	يتوقف عن اتلاف	Give suggestions	يعطي اقتراحات
Be located	يقع جغرافيا	Make suggestions	يكون اقتراحات
Careful about	حريص بشأن	Make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء
Pay for	يدفع	Make notes	يدون ملاحظات
Catch fish	يصطاد سمك	Make suggestion	يكون اقتراح
Connected to the internet	متصل بالانترنت	Along the river	علي امتداد النهر
For fun	للمتعة	Do / cause damage	يسبب تلف
Run on...........	يعمل باستخدام	Cause fires	يسبب حرائق



Language Notes

Electric – Electricity – Electrician

- Electric كهربائي (صفة)
- Electricity الكهرباء
- Electrician عامل الكهرباء

Climate – Weather

- Climate
  المناخ (كيفية "تصرف" الغلاف الجوي على مدى فترات زمنية طويلة نسبيًا (سنوات أو حتى مئات السنين)
- Weather
  الطقس (ظروف الغلاف الجوي على مدى فترة زمنية قصيرة (ساعة أو يوم أو أسبوع)

Canal –Channel

- Canal قناة مائية
- Channel قناة تليفزيونية

Position -Location

- Position وضع / مكانة / موضع مناسب
- Location موقع / مكان / مكان تصوير

Diving - Scuba diving

- Diving الغطس
- Scuba diving الغطس بجهاز تنفس



EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

b Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1- This key is one of many historical ....in the museum.
a objects b ovens c pavement d site

2- ....visit historical places and stay in hotels.
a Tourists b Farmers c teachers d doctors

3- Please..................................me to visit my aunt tomorrow.
a remember b remind c reuse d recycle

4- Who will you..................................for in the next election ?
a shout b vote c remind d tell

5- A..................................is usually historical and quiet.
a bus b tourist c museum d rainforest

6- ....is the forest with tall trees which grow in rainy area
a Rainforest b Rainstorm c Rainwater d Raincoat

7- The place has no water, it's ....
a wet b cold c dry d damp

8- I think..................................of materials benefit the environment.
a recycling b cycling c recycled d cycled



9- If you want to laugh a lot , come with me to the ....show.

a sad b funny c bad d boring

10- Planes always runs..................................petrol.

a by b for c to d on

11- In summer , I like to go to the beach to..................................fish .

a hunt b shoot c make d catch

12- Is your computer..................................to the internet?

a contacted b caught c connected d made

13- The ....stole the lady's purse and ran away .

a thief b safe c save d theft

14- The big shark..................................the diver and he was badly injured.

a attacked b like c loved d played

15- The Panda is..................................so we should help it live.

a danger b dangerous c endangered d serious

16- He made a terrible mistake . As a / an ....he is punished.

a prize b result c reward d award

17- Can you..................................us a reasonable suggestion about our holiday?

a do b take c make d give

18- You can vote in elections , if you are an/ a ....

a infant b child c kid d adult

19- You need ....to buy a drink from that machine.

a coins b jars c cans d bottles

20- Some cars are run on natural ....

a fruit b vegetables c gas d petrol

21- A long time ago, people used gold ....for money.

a walls b rivers c museums d coins

22- If you leave ....in the sun , it melts.

a bread b ice c glass d tea

23- Museums contain a lot of..................................

a temples b statues c deserts d vans

24- He played handball..................................fun.

a to b at c by d for

25- I like t-shirts made of..................................because they are soft .

a cotton b wood c metal d cattle

26- Adults are the people who are able to........................and choose the person they want.

a vote b sound c avoid d voice

27- My class decided that we could..................................bottles to recycle them.

a drop b throw c attract d collect

28- Climate change is a..................................problem that we should care about.

a community b national c local d global

29- Rubbish in the river..................................the wildlife.

a stores b damages c protects d produces

30- When there is too much smoke coming out from factories, it......................air pollution.

a causes b stops c protects d saves

31- The price of the room in this hotel is 500 pounds a night.............................. breakfast .
a introducing b paying c including d producing

32- Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city..................................
a corner b centre c border d wall

33- Throwing rubbish in water will lead to..................................fish
a damage b damaging c damaged d damages

34- The Nile used to..................................every year before the High Dam.
a flood b feed c rain d finish

35- We suffered from..................................because of lack of rain three years ago.
a drought b dry c rain d flood

36- My mother puts a bin behind the kitchen door to put ....in it .
a food b fish c water d rubbish

37- His body ....is high . He needs cold compresses.
a temperature b blood c lung d heart

38- Where is Port Said ....on the map ? -It is on the coast .
a lied b lay c located d calculated

39- He prefers walking ....the bank of the River Nile .
a long b belong c tall d along

40- ....is used for making bread .
a Cotton b Silk c Wheat d Sugar

41- Egypt is known..................................its wonderful monuments
a of b for c by d at

42- There is a lot of..................................on tops of mountains .
a salt b sugar c snow d fruit

43- All of us should protect our monuments..................................being robbed .
a of b from c about d at

44- Egypt is full of places which are considered ....reserve
a nature b land c soil d tree

45- We should stop tourists from damaging the..................................reefs.
a floral b collar c coral d plural

46- I go to my teacher to help me..................................my problem .
a solve b solving c solved d solves

47- Tell the children to be careful ....knives and scissors .
a with b of c about d to

48- My father aims to ....a new house.
a build b building c builds d built

49- High temperature will lead to..................................ice on mountains
a melting b solving c smelting d smuggling

50- Tourists go to Hurghada to enjoy..................................in the Red Sea.
a scuba diving b diver c dove d running

Grammar in brief

Adjectives الصفات

- قسمنا الصفات دي بقي لـ أربع درجات

1- Positive degree 1- الدرجة الإيجابية

-وهي الصفة عندما تصف اسم واحد فقط [مفرد/ جمع].وتأتي الصفة بدون أي إضافة

EX Ali and Mohamed are tall.

- هنا مش بقارن بينهم ولكن بقول ان الاتنين طوال , ولا كمان بساويهم ببعض ولكن هما الاتنين طوال

2-Comparative degree 2- درجة المقارنة

هيقابلك نوعين من الصفات (صفة قصيرة , يعني بننطقها ع مرة واحدة من مقطع واحد زي كلمة (short)
والنوع التاني الصفة الطويلة اللي بننطقها ع اكثر من مقطع زي كلمة (dangerous) وهنتعامل بالشكل ده

[الصفة قصيرة - من مقطع واحد + er] + than

EX Ali is shorter than Mohamed.

more / less + الصفة الطويلة بدون إضافة + than

EX The lion is more dangerous than the monkey.

- خلي بالك في حالة السؤال مش بنستخدم (than) بمعني (أيهما...؟)

EX Which one is taller, Ali or Ahmed?

3- Superlative degree 3- درجة التفضل

وهي الصفة عندما تفضل اسم على الجميع (يعني واحد أفضل من الجميع في صفة معينة سواء صفة سلبية أو ايجابية)

the + [الصفة القصيرة + est]

EX The cheetah is the fastest animal.

the most / the least + [الصفة الطويلة بدون إضافة]

EX The lion is the most dangerous animal.

ملحوظات هامة :

الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (e) يضاف إليها [r/ st] ⬅⬅⬅⬅ nice ➡ nicer / nicest

والصفة التي تنتهي بـ (y) تحول إلى [ier/iest] ⬅⬅⬅⬅ happy ➡ happier / happiest

4- Equal degree 4- درجة التساوي

وهي الصفة عندما تساوي بين اسمين (يعني الاتنين زي بعض)

as + الصفة بدون إضافة + as

EX Ahmed is as tall as Ali.

وعند النفي تستخدم **not as / so + الصفة + as**

EX Ahmed isn't as / so tall as Ali.

هيقابلك بعض الصفات الشاذه لازم تبقي عارف شكلها

Irregular adjectives

ايجابية	المقارنة	التفضيل
Good	Better than	The best
Little	Less than	The least
Much/many/a lot of	More than	The most
Far	Farther/further than	The farthest/the furthest



Passive voice المبني للمجهول

◆ مضارع بسيط معلوم

يعبر عن عادة أو حقيقة (حدث يتكرر) وبيجي مع المواعيد الثابته والوظائف الثابته.		
الكلمات الدالة	النفي	التكوين
Always دائما - usually عادة - often غالبا sometimes أحيانا - never ابدا - every كل	doesn't+مصدر don't +مصدر	فاعل مفرد ➡ فعل +s I - فاعل جمع ➡ مصدر
EX Ali plays football		

◆ مضارع بسيط مجهول

مفعول + am/ is/ are + p.p.

EX Football is played

◆ السؤال

Does / Do + فاعل + مصدر ?	معلوم
Am – Is – Are + مفعول + P.P ?	مجهول

◆ ملاحظات

جميع الأفعال يضاف لها [s] ما عدا: - الفعل الذي آخره [y] قبلها ساكن تقلب إلى [ies]

- الفعل الذي آخره [sh / ch / o / s / x / z] يضاف إليه [es].

– تستخدم كلمات المضارع البسيط قبل الفعل أو بعد (V. to be)

❑ طيب ازاي هنعرف انه عايز يحول الجملة للمجهول ؟

❑ هتلاقي بين قوسين المفعول أو(v. to be) او التصريف التالت أو المفعول

– We make books of paper. (are made)

– Books are made of paper.

-خلي بالك بقي ن الجملة لو منفية بـ (doesn't / don't) فـ طبعا بنحذفها وننفي الجملة فـ المجهول بـ (isn't / aren't)

-She doesn't do the homework. (The homework)

EX The homework isn't done.

- يمكن إستخدم (الفاعل +by) في أخر جملة المبني للمجهول إذا كان يضيف معلومه جديده للجمله.

Ahmed watches T.V. (by)

EX T.V. is watched by Ahmed.



EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1- Arabic..................................in Egypt.

a is speaking　b speaks　c is spoken　d speak

2- Clouds are ....by the wind.

a blown　b blow　c blows　d blowing

3- Football ....everywhere.

a play　b plays　c is playing　d is played

4- A lot of comic books ....every year.

a is produced　b produced　c are produced　d produce

5- It..................................that money brings happiness.

a say　b are said　c is said　d said

6- Rubbish ....every day.

a is collected　b collect　c are collected　d collected

7- Computers..................................everywhere.

a used　b is used　c are use　d are used

8- Inter-city trains..................................by men.

a are driven usually　b is usually driven　c are usually driven　d drive

9- Alexandria ....in the north of Egypt. SB

a located　b is locating　c is located　d locates

10- The farmers around here ....many vegetables. SB

a growing　b are grown　c grow　d is growing

11- The museum ....by lots of people every year. SB

a is visiting　b are visited　c visits　d is visited

12- The city is ....for its beautiful buildings. SB

a is known　b knows　c is knowing　d knew

13- Lots of cotton ....in the area. SB

a are grown　b is grown　c grew　d grows

14- Many fish ....in the sea near Port Said. SB

a caught　b is caught　c are caught　d catch

15- Special foods ....at the festival.

a eat　b is eaten　c are eaten　d eating

16- When is the room ....?

a decorate　b decorates　c decorated　d decorating



17- ....cars made in Japan now ?

a Are b Were c Was d Were

18- A million babies ....every year.

a are born b were born c is born d born

19- Hundreds of eggs....................................in a big pan.

a cook b are cooked c are cooking d cooks

20- Fish ....in special freezers.

a is kept b is keeping c keeps d keep

21- Bad habits ....by good students.

a avoid b are avoiding c are avoided d avoiding

22- My lessons are usually ....before exams.

a revising b revised c revise d revises

23- When is Sham El-Nessirn....................................in Egypt?

a celebrated b celebrate c celebrates d celebrating

24- How are cakes.................................... ?

a made b make c makes d making

25- People are....................................than snakes.

a big b bigger c as big d biggest

26- This book isn't as interesting....................................that one.

a as b so c than d then

27- A bike is....................................expensive than a scooter.

a most b many c less d least

28- English is the....................................language.

a easy b easier c easiest d as easy

29- Have you ever seen a....................................snake than this one?

a big b biggest c as bigger d bigger

30- Who is ....Ali or Mohamed?

a tall b taller c tallest d most tall

31- She cooks as....................................as her sister.

a clever b cleverly c cleverest d cleverer

32- Everest is....................................than Kilimanjaro.

a higher b highest c high d as high

33- Physics is ....difficult than history.

a most b more c as d the





34- Gold is ....expensive than silver.

a more   b most   c less   d least

35- Aswan is..................................than Cairo.

a far   b farther   c farthest   d furthest

36- She sings as ....as her friend.

a good   b bad   c well   d best

37- He is..................................than Ali.

a good   b bad   c best   d worse

38- London is one of the..................................cities in the world.

a large   b larger   c as large   d largest

39- The more you study, the..................................marks you get.

a high   b higher   c highest   d lowest

40- There are ....English cars than Korea ·

a least   b fewer   c the fewest   d the least

41- This bottle has the ....orange juice in it.

a least   b fewest   c fewer   d less

42- The old library has .... books than the modern library.

a least   b less   c few   d fewer

43- We should spend ....time watching TV.

a fewer   b few   c a   d little

44- Students usually have ....sleep on the bus.

a little   b few   c less   d fewer

45- My brother is not active; he spends ....hours studying than I do.

a fewer   b less   c many   d more

46- ....students in our school have visited England.

a Little   b Less   c The least   d Few

47- I bought the ....juice bottles.

a least   b fewest   c few   d less

48- Summer is the driest season because it has ....rain.

a the least   b the fewest   c the most   d the more

49- I have ....time to read this year because I have more schoolwork.

a little   b few   c fewer   d less

Complete the sentences with the correct form of word(s) in brackets:

1. What is petrol……………….(make)from?
2. When……………..(does) the shop opened?
3. We …………..(are watched) films every Friday.
4. Sugar cane ………………………………… (grow) in Minya.
5. Lunch is always……………………………… (cooking) by my mother.
6. Cotton……………………………………… (used to) make clothes.
7. Radwa is the ………………………………… (thin) girl in the school.
8. This café is the ……………………………… (worse) in the city.
9. Bikes are…………………………………… (not expensive) as planes.
10. My house is ……………………………… (as small) yours.
11. He runs as…………………(quick) as his father.
12. The film is…………………(most)interesting than the novel.
13. The play was …………..(most) more interesting than the film.
14. He is the………………(better) student .
15. She is not as tall…………(so) her brother.

b Complete the following dialogue:

Mohamed : Where do you live?
Omer : I (1) ……………………………………in Tanta.
Mohamed : Where is Tanta located?
Omer : It's (2) ……………………………………in the north of Egypt.
Mohamed : What is it known for?
Omer : It's known for its (3) ……………………………………sweets.
Mohamed : How can I go there?
Omer : You can go there by bus or by (4) ……………………………………
Mohamed : Tanta is a very beautiful city.
Omer : (5) ……………………………………, it is.

FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF

Roquia : The problem is that we all use too much water.
Zeina : I (1) ……………………………………We should do something about that.
Roquia : Certainly. We could use less water.
Zeina : That's (2) ……………………………………So, how can we use less water?
Roquia : Well, (3) ……………………………………don't we try recycling water?
Zeina : Sorry, I don't know what you mean.
Roquia : We could use water twice.
Zeina : (4) ……………………………………could we do that?
Roquia : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Zeina : That's an interesting (5) ……………………………………!The plants would like that.





Test based on unit 6

Listening

1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1) What does Roquia like?

a Chocolate | b Crisps | c Pizza | d Meat

2) How old is Omer?

a Ten | b Seven | c Six | d Nine

3) Does Zeina like healthy snacks?

a Yes, she doesn't | b - No, she doesn't | c Yes, she does. | d No, she does

4) Omer eats ....and peppers.

a crisps | b carrots | c chocolate | d pizza

Language Functions

2- Complete the following dialogue :

Jane : Do you have mountains (1) ....in Egypt ?
Nada : Yes , we have mountains on the Red (2) ....
Jane : Do they have snow on their (3) ....?
Nada : Yes . they have and they can be melt because of (4) ....change
Jane : It will (5) ....dangerous if all the snow melts
Nada : I agree with you

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A) Amr : What's your favourite TV programme?
Maha : ....
Amr : I watch it, too.

B) Manar : .... ?
Marwa: The match starts at ten o'clock.

Reading Comprehension

3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

A brave 13-year-old boy, Karim, has got a medal for rescuing a four-year-old child from a swimming pool. The child was playing next to the water when suddenly he fell in. He couldn't swim. The child was in the pool for about a minute when Karim saw him. Karim jumped into the water and rescued the child. The child was not hurt. His parents were very pleased to see him! They have invited Karim and <u>his</u> parents to visit them a t their home.

❒ ***A- Answer the following question.***

1) How old is Karim?

....

2) Why did he get a medal?

....

3) How long was the child in the pool?

....



B- Choose the correct answer

4) Karim .... into the water and rescued the child.

a climbed   b rescued   c jumped   d ate

5) The underlined word ' His ' refers to ....

a Karim' parents   b Karim   c the boy's parents   d the boy

6) Karim' parents were very ....to see him!

a sad   b pleased   c bad   d angry

Vocabulary and Structure

4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- When is Sham el-Nessim...................................in Egypt .

a celebrate   b celebrated   c celebrates   d celebrating

2- The parade ....watched by thousands of people every year.

a is   b was   c are   d were

3- Silver is not ....expensive as gold.

a than   b so   c to   d for

4- He speaks English...................................than he writes it .

a worst   b fewest   c fewer   d worse

5- The Pacific Ocean is the...................................of all oceans .

a big   b as big   c bigger   d biggest

6- Tourists come from all over the world to see our...................................

a monuments   b TV   c matches   d pots

7- Heavy rain causes rivers to ....

a rain   b dry   c flood   d blood

8- ....helps to protect the environment.

a Recycling   b Rubbish   c Bins   d Petrol

9- I will buy an ....car .

a electricity   b electric   c electrical   d mechanic

10- We should stop tourists...................................damaging the environment.

a from   b at   c about   d to

5-Complete the sentences with the correct form:

1) Mai is <u>most</u> beautiful than Dalia. (.......................)
2) Climate change will lead to <u>local</u> warming . (.......................)
3) <u>Recycling</u> paper is cheaper than any other paper . (.......................)
4) Many plants are <u>growing</u> in Egypt. (.......................)

Writing

6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Floods

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



How to write a paragraph

كتابة موضوع التعبير

لما تيجي تكتب براجراف , في بعض النقاط اللي لازم تراعيها

1- العنوان : وده بيكون في وسط السطر

2- اترك مسافة صغيرة عند بداية أي فقرة جديدة

3- مراعاة علامات الترقيم , ودي هتخلي شكل البراجراف قوي وبيؤدي المعني المقصود.

4- مراعاة عدد الجمل بحيث يكون براجراف متكامل وغير ناقص عن المطلوب.

5- مراعاة الزمن وفي الغالب بيكون جميع جمل البراجراف في زمن واحد.

6- أن تكون كل جملة ذات تركيب بنائي صحيح , وطبعا احنا عرفنا الازمنة بشكل كويس

وازاي نكون جملة سليمة , وان كل جملة في البراجراف لازم تحتوي علي فاعل وفعل وتعالي نفكرك بشكل الجمل في الازمنة المختلفة

مضارع بسيط	فاعل ----- > فعل + s \ مصدر	عادة – حقيقة – مواعيد ثابتة-وظائف ثابتة
مضارع مستمر	فاعل ------- > am \ is \ are + v.ing	حدث يحدث الأن
مضارع تام	فاعل ------- > has\ have + p.p	حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر ع الحاضر
مضارع تام مستمر	فاعل ------- > has\ have + been+ v.ing	حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمر في الحاضر
ماضي بسيط	فاعل ----- > التصريف الثاني	حدث تم وانتهي أثرة
ماضي مستمر	فاعل ------- > was\were + v.ing	يصف حدث كان يحدث في وقت معين وانتهي اثرة
ماضي تام	فاعل ------- > had + p.p	حدث تم وانتهي قبل حدث أخر في الماضي
مستقبل بسيط	فاعل ----- > will + مصدر	حدث سوف يحدث في المستقبل
استطاعة مضارع	فاعل ----- > can + مصدر	امكانية فعل شيئ في المضارع \ المستقبل
استطاعة ماضي	فاعل ----- > could + مصدر	قدرة في الماضي علي فعل شيئ
الزام	فاعل ----- > must + مصدر	الزام ووجوب
نصيحة	فاعل ----- > should + مصدر	نصيحة بفعل شيئ
احتمال	فاعل ----- > may + مصدر	احتمالية حدوث شيئ

وكمان دي جمل ممكن تستعين بيها

There is no doubt that .... is very important.

لا شك أن ......مهم جدا

We all agree that ....is very important in our life nowadays.

نتفق جميعا أن .... مهم جدا في حياتنا اليوم.

No one can deny that.............. has an important role / bad effect in our life.

لا أحد ينكر أن ......له تأثير علي حياتنا.

To sum up, one can say that .... is really...............

باختصار, نستطيع أن نقول ....هو حقا................

Finally, it is quite clear that..... Is really....صفة ......

فـ النهاية , من الواضح أن ......يعتبر...................

Recommended Paragraphs

Daily routine

My name's Huda. I live in the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mother, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 am. He works in a school. Sometimes I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I study hard for my exams. I often listen to music. We often go to the park at the weekends. I like to play on the grass there.

My bedroom

I live in a flat with my family. It has got two bedrooms, a dining room, a kitchen and a living room and a bathroom. It's in a big city. Our flat is very comfortable. My bedroom has a big window with curtains. When I open the curtains, the room is very bright with sunlight. My bed is under the window. I have a wardrobe in front of the bed. I put my clothes there. There is a mirror next to the wardrobe. There's also a lamp next to the bed. The bathroom is next to my bedroom. It's big. It has a nice basin there. In the evenings, I like to read in bed or watch TV. Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open.

"My penfriend

Today , I'm going to talk about my penfriend. I have apenfriend from England His name is John. He is thirteen years old. He is very nice and friendly. He tells me about his daily routine. His daily routine is the same as mine. He gets up at 6:30 every morning. His school starts very early so he goes to school without having breakfast with his family. He has his breakfast at school in " breakfast break". His favourite subjects are maths and science. Kevin will visit Egypt for the first time on the next summer holiday. I hope to see him soon.

A job you like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. He or she helps us get better after being sick. I look forward to becoming a doctor one day to look after the sick and to try to find out the reason for that. He always looks after ill people and tries to find out why they are ill or what hurts them. If a doctor understands their illness, he gives them the right medicines to feel better. A good doctor usually makes sure that all people feel healthy. The nurse's job is as important as she helps doctors and patients. They are truly angels. We have to work hard to have the jobs of our dreams.



What makes a hero

A hero is someone who can show courage when they face a problem.

A hero is a person who is able to help the others in many ways. A person can become a hero by saving someone who is in danger. Another example of a hero is someone who is there to help others to go on through difficulties of life. A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live. A hero does not always have to show courage, he can be afraid, but still be a hero through his other actions. A hero can be a teacher. He can teach you to read or write and that will make a big difference in your life. That is a hero to me, someone who makes a difference in a person's life.

Someone I'm proud of

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person 1 am proud of. She is 40 years. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

How life used to be different in ancient Egypt

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today. Poor children didn't use to go to school. Children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. Children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the sons. The Ancient Egyptians used to leave jewellery and furniture inside their houses to the daughters. They lived around the Nile River where they could grow crops. They built pyramids. You can still see these pyramids today. They knew a lot about maths, medicine and farming.

A historic place you visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. This history made it more interesting. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.



Making questions تكوين السؤال

تكوين السؤال ده هتحتاجه جدا فـ المحادثات فـ تعالي نتعرف فيه علي كل نقطه

الزمن	الاستخدام	المساعد	الأساسي
Present simple مضارع بسيط	عاده او حقيقه	does/do	مصدر
Present con. مضارع مستمر	حدث يحدث الان	is/are	فعل + ing
Past simple ماضي بسيط	حدث تم وانتهي اثره	did	مصدر
Past con. ماضي مستمر	حدث كان مستمر وانتهي	was/were	فعل + Ing
Present perfect مضارع تام	حدث تم وانتهي وله اثر	has/have	تصريف ثالث
Past perfect ماضي تام	حدث تم قبل آخر فـ الماض	had	تصريف ثالث
Future simple مستقبل بسيط	حدث سوف يحدث	will	مصدر

عند عمل سؤال لابد من تحديد زمن السؤال اللي هتسأله . فمثلا اذا كنت عايز تسأل وتقول (أين أنت ذاهب الان ؟) يبقي ده مضارع مستمر ....الخ وهناك نوعين من الاسئله

النوع الأول:-

- بـ (هل ....؟) ? الفعل الأساسي + فاعل + مساعد

يعني لو عايز تقول (هل ستلعب ؟) ده يبقي سؤال في المستقبل ويكون كالتالي Will you play?

-النوع الثاني:-

بـ (أداة استفهام ...؟) ?الفعل الأساسي + فاعل + مساعد+أداة استفهام

لو عايز تسأل (أين أنت ذاهب الأن؟) يبقي كده ده سؤال في المضارع المستمر

Where are you going?

لاحظ أن الفاعل يتغير حسب سؤالك عما يفعل الفعل (**I-he-she-it-we-you-they**)

دي أكثر أدوات الاستفهام استخداما

What	ماذا	Where	اين	Whose	لمن
When	متى	Who	من للعاقل	Why	لماذا
How	كيف	How much	كم للكمية	How much	كم سعر
How many	كم عدد	How often	كم مرة	How long	كم المده

ملاحظات هامة:

اذا كان المطلوب سؤال ولكن لا توجد علامة استفهام نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

1- Tell me + كلمة الاستفهام + الفاعل + الفعل ....

2- Tell me if / whether + الفاعل + الفعل ....

هناك أسئلة مختصرة في المحادثة تشذ عن القاعدة العامة لتكوين السؤال عليك حفظها :

Single or double?	سرير أم أثنين؟	With or without a bath?	بحمام أم بدون؟
Where from?	من أين أنت؟	First or second class?	درجة أولى ولا تانية؟
Single or return?	ذهاب أم عودة؟	What else?	وماذا أيضا ؟
Single or married?	أعزب أم متزوج؟	And you?	وماذا عنك أنت؟
Where to?	أين أنت ذاهب؟	What about you?	وماذا عنك أنت؟
Why ?	لماذا؟	Why not?	لما لا؟



Unit 1 Coming home



2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Basma : Hello, Sara. How are you?
Sara : Fine, Basma.
Basma :{1)........................ do you go to school, Sara?
Sara :I always (2)................ ....to school.
Basma :Why?
Sara : Because it's near my house,
Basma :What do you do in your (3).. ....time?
Sara :I (4)....................... help my mum with the housework.
Basma : Great. Do you (5)......... ....any brothers or sisters?
Sara :Yes, I do. I have one sister.

2 -Maher : Hello, Essam.
Essam : (1)......................Maher.
Maher : What's our favourite (2)..................?.
Essam : My favourite sport is football.
Maher : Great .I like playing (3).......................
Essam : Well, Chess is a great hobby. I like it, Too..
Maher : Did you (4).................any chess competitions?
Essam : yes, I won Alexandria chess competition last year.
Maher : (5)............is the next competition?
Essam : in October..

3-You : I like to do the same things every .
A friend : So you have a daily
You : (1).................... . I usually get up early .
A friend : (2) ....do you usually get up?
You : I always get up at 6:30.
A friend :(3)...........do you eat breakfast with ?
You : I (4)................... eat breakfast with my father. I eat it with my mother only.
A friend : Why not?
You : (5)......................my father always goes to work very early. What about you?
A friend : I don't have a routine at all.

4-Judy : Do you live in a flat or a house?
Jana : I live in a house (1)..................a large garden.
Judy : Fantastic! How (2).....................rooms do you have?
Jana : We've got three rooms, a bathroom and a kitchen.
Judy : Have you got a bedroom of your own?
Jana : No. I (3)....................a room with my sister.
Judy : How (4)......................you like your bedroom?
Jana : It's very comfortable. It has a big window and a wardrobe.
Judy : (5).....................there curtains in your room?
Jana : Yes, there are.

5-Ali : What time (1) .... your brother get up ?



Hassan : He gets up at seven o'clock.
Ali : How does he (2) .... to school every day ?
Hassan : He goes there ……………. bus every day.
Ali : How (3) .... lessons does he have?
Hassan : (4) …………….. has nine lessons a day.
Ali : What subject does he (5) …………. most?
Hassan : He likes English

6-Dina : What's your typical day like ?
Jana :| usually get up at six o'clock.
Dina : When do you (1)...................breakfast?
Jana :At six thirty-with my family.
Dina : What (2)..................do you arrive at home ?
Jana : At 7:45 in my father's car.
Dina : When do you (3)...................school?
Jana : At 1:30 in the (4)................
Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch ?
Jana : (5)..................., I do.

7-Radwa: Hi, Seham. What are you doing?
Seham: Hi, Radwa. I'm writing (1) an ....
Radwa : (2) To ....are you writing?
Seham: To my pen-friend Jane.
Radwa: Where (3)............she live?
Seham: She lives (4)...........France.
Radwa: How(5)............is she?
Seham: She is 13.

Mr/mohamed Fawzi

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs Hala was a teacher of English in a preparatory school. She was very kind and helpful, so all students liked he,. She used to come to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give their students more lessons and help them with their homework. she has got a small family . her husband, Mr Samir is a doctor, her two daughters Sama and Nada and her only son Salah. Salah is going to be a dentist. But her elder daughter Sama who likes English and science wants to be a doctor like her father. Nada, the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer programmer. They are a happy family.

A) Answer the following questions:

1.Why did Mrs Hala come to school at 7 o'clock?..
2.How many children have Mrs Hala got?..
3.Why do you think all students like Mrs Hala?...

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4.Nada is the.........in the family.
a) longest b) youngest c) tallest d) heaviest
5.The teacher's only son is going to be a.......
a) teacher b) doctor c) dentist d) farmer
6.Mrs Hala's husband works in a....................
a) bank b) school c) farm d) hospital





Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at known times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But in fact most of them don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People should not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugar drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practise any sport.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should people eat and drink to keep healthy?

....

2. How many meals are there in the day?

....

3. What do doctors advise people not to do?

....

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a. doctors b. people c. fruits d. meals

5. .... people care about food.

a. All b. Many c. Few d. No

6. Doctors say that people should not eat too many.............

a. cakes b. vegetables c. fruits d. drinks

Mr/mohamed Fawzi

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evenings and he caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my brother doesn't go to school as well. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. She watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up to complete my study there. My father encourages me to do that.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hassan's father work ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

3. How long will Hassan's father stay in England ?

....

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to....

a. Hassan b. Hassan's father c. Hassan's sister d. Hassan's family

5. When do they go to the park ?......





a. On Sunday b. On Saturday c. Everyday d. On Wednesday
6. Hassan hopes to travel to.....
a. France b. England c. China d.KSA

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1 - I go to the baker's with my mother.....; we always buy bread in the morning. (WB)
a) every b) dairy c) diary d) daily
2 -My father likes to read stories......the sofa in the evenings.
a) at b) on c) to d) in
-3- I usually.........my friends to have fun after I do my homework.
a) text b) test c) make d) read
4- All children like to.......sports in their free time.
a) make b) play c) spend d) go
5- We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a...............
a) joy b) difference c) fun d) routine
6- My brother has an important...........today. He hopes to get the new job.
a) view b) review c) group d) interview
7- My.........friend is called Waleed. I like him so much.
a) best b) worst c) ugly d) bad
8- I live in a.......of flats with my parents and two sisters.
a) packet b) block c) piece d) wall
9- | like to........to my grandma when she tells us stories before we sleep.
a) go b) walk c) listen d) get
10- We go to the.........when we want to buy bread.
a) butcher's b) chemist's c) baker's d) grocer's
11 Young people should learn how to..........their free time usefully.
a) lose b) have c) do d) spend
12 He went to the station to........the bus to work.
a) take b) ride c) climb d) talk
13- Come and sit on this........; four people can sit on it. WB
a) sofa b) chair c) bed d) wheelchair
14-I saw Ahmed's father on his.........to work this morning. WB
a) road b) street c) away d) way
15-What activities do you........at the weekend, Habiba?
a) make b) do c) get d) go
16- A.........is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
a) clinic b) workshop c) prison d) hospital
17- Roberta feels......when some men take their father from their home. WB
a) terrible b) glad c) pleased d) boring
18 The family don't have much money and now they are................ WB
a) poor b) rich c) ugly d) boring
19- There are four.............on the sofa.
a) chairs b) cushions c) tables d) windows
20- We have a beautiful.............on the floor in front of the living room.
a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d)TV
21- I have a.............of drawers where I can put many things.
a) chest b) test c)box d) piece
22- My little sister always looks at the..........to see herself in it.
a) drawer b) carpet c) wardrobe d) mirror
23- My mother has a big...............to put her dresses in.
a) carpet b) curtain c) drawer d) wardrobe
24- There's a big.............in the bathroom where we wash up.
a) bath b) basin c) shower d) tap

25- I have a.............in my bedroom to put ali my books on.
a) wardrobe b) mirror c) bookshelf d)carpet
26- I always put a bottle of water in..........of me when I study.
a) front b) near c) between d) next
27- Students should..............English every day to be perfect at it.
a) tell b) practise c) send d) forget
28- This isn't your book. It..........to your sister. Don t play with it.
a) gives b) belongs clowns d) spends
29- My school is a short.............from my house. It s very near.
a) fly b) ride c) drive d)walk
30- El Faiyoum has many...............reserves which you can visit.
a) traditional b) tradition c) nature d) natural
31 -Many young men look..............jobs to earn enough money.
a) at b) after c) up d) for
32- I get up early to..........dressed and go to school on time.
a) get b) do c) have d) make
33- He has a small shop in the city centre. He........food and drinks.
a) sells b) buys c) borrows d) spends
34- We have a big house where we live upstairs, but my grandparents live...............
a) downstairs b) under stairs c) on the roof d) underground
35-You can see yourself in the........... WB
a) lamp b) mirror c) carpet d) curtain
36- On a...........day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her jobs. WB
a) electrical b) typical c) technical d) technological
37-Roberta's family home in the city is big and.........It is really nice. WB
a) ugly b) attractive c) boring d) terrible
38 A.........is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes. WB
a) wardrobe b) mirror c) carpet d) drawer
39- my parents sometimes get ………………late.
a at home b for home c to home d home
40- My dad starts work very early, so he .... home before we get up
a-goes b-walks c-leaves d-watches
41-my father likes travelling ....the train everyday.
a. on b. in c. by d. with
42- I hope to buy a big home ……………. a large garden.
a) on b) for c) by d) with
43-The children were very happy when they..........their father again.
a) ate b) spent c) bought d) saw
44-The police took him.............from home.
a) way b) a way c) away d) ways
45-living in the desert has a lot of................
a. houses b. adventures c. rooms d. shops
46-The farmer doesn’t need to....... his goats, as they can find their food in the mountains. WB
a. eat b. feed c. play d. drink
47. My uncle has a......in the garden and he uses it to water his plants. WB
a) tap b) tip c) tape d) tube
48. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can......our food. WB
a.share b.feed c.shade d.wash
49-In Germany , There is a 'breakfast ....' after the first lesson.
a-brake b-park c-bark d-break
50. Can you..............my mother for me , because my phone isn't working.
a. text b. next c. send d. speak
51) My dad never works ....the weekend.
a. at b. with c.on d.of



52- El Faiyoum is a large city with beautiful nature reserves ....
a-nearby b-near c-next to d-nearly
53-The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway ....
a. mine b. fine c. line d. shine
54-I have two jobs to .... when I get home from school
a. take b. make c. work d. do

Grammar

1- I.....................get up lateat the weekends. I never get up early.
a never b always c usually d sometimes
2.What time........your firstlesson this morning?
a. is b. are c. does d.do
3.She.....................the bus to get to school.
a.taking b.take c.takes d.talk
4.We........to playtennis every week in the club.
a.prefers b. preferred c. preferring d.prefer
5-Dina goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. She.............goes swimming.
a. never b.sometimes c. always d.usually
6-Amir...............walks to school on Sunday, Monday, Tuesday and Thursday.
a. often b.never c. always d.usually
7-I have breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning. I....have breakfast at that time.
a. often b. never c. usually d.always
8-We......................go to school on fridays.
a never b always c usually d sometimes
9-My brother ....a clever tennis player.
a always b is always c always is d never
10-Does Ali ....coffee with his family ?
a drink always b drinks always c always drink d always drinks
11-Amr..................late.
a often is b is always c always is d is every
12-Birds always ....in the early morning.
a singing b to sing c sings d sing
13- He never ……………… his homework in the evening.
a-do b-does c-did d-doing
14. What time does he usually ………… work?
a. leave b. leaves c. leaving d. left
15.She .... a sports car .
a) never drive b) drives never c) never drives d) never
16-Sama and Hend always.............in the home.
a. help b. helping c. helps d. to help
17. A:How…………… do you watch TV? B : Twice a week.
a. many b. long c. much d. often
18- our teacher of English…………….speaks Arabic in class.
a- don't b- doesn't c- never d- won't
19. Do you …………….. on Fridays?
a.often travel b.travel often c.often travels d.travels often.
20-My father............reads the newspaper in the morning. He reads it every morning.
a. often b. never c. always d.sometimes
21-Students .... in classes during the break.
a. stay always b. never stay c. always stay d.stay never



22_mona ....eat peppers. She doesn't like them at all.
a. often b. never c. always d.every
23-....................children like playing computer games ?
a. Does b. Do c. Are d.Were
24-Does Ali ....lunch with his family ?
a has always b have always c always have d always has
25- Hany and you never ....computer games with me.
a.play b. plays c. is playing d.are playing
26-..................Nabil's sisters play tennis? الجيزة ٢٠٢٠
a- Is b- Do c- Are d- Does
27-Tamer and his brother ....the family car. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
a wash b washes c washing d is washing
28-...................speak English?
a.You do b. Are you c. You are d. Do you
29) Sorry, Heba..................not here at the moment.
a. is b. does c. are d. do
30- Does Hend text her friend before she.............to bed ?
a. go b. going c. goes d. is going

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1-Does he often............. (goes) out this evening ?
2-M teacher always............. (work) very hard.
3-How often........... (do) sami go swimming a week ?
4-I always.............. (listens) to the teacher carefully.
5-my brothers usually............ (watching) TV before they go to bed
6. My father...................... (never play) chess at home.
7- Ali sometimes.................(have) lunch at school
8-Nada................... (don't) usually get up before seven.
9-Tamer................. (be usually) very friendly
10- They don't always............... (plays) tennis on Sundays.
11-(Do).............. your father a good teacher ?
12- They.............. (be) never late for school.
13-The school bus never............ (stop) near my house
14- why.............(do) you always late?
15-Nabil and tamer..................(not) watch TV everyday.
16 - Do you............ (goes) to the club every day ?
17- Parents............... (not) like fish.
18- My daily routine ....(has) the same every school day ?

6-Write a paragraph of six (80) words on

"Daily routine"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

....

"you bedroom"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

"Your penfriend"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

"Jobs you do at home"

....
....
....
....

Unit 2 How are you feeling?

2- complete the following dialogue:

1-Asem : Hi, Nader. Can you tell me a little bit about your job?
Nader : Certainly! What would you like to know?
Asem : First of all, what (1)..............................your job?
Nader : I work as a computer (2)..........................
Asem : What (3)............................you do in your job?
Nader : I design programs to use at home.
Asem : What (4)..............................you doing at the moment?
Nader : I'm developing in-house programs.
Asem : (5)............................you ever have meetings?
Nader : Yes, I usually have meetings once a month.



2-Judy : Hi Leila. Where are you?
Leila : Hi Judy. I'm in the (1)........... with my family.
Judy : What are you doing in the park?
Leila : I'm sitting (2)........... a tree. It's very sunny.
Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too?
Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing (3)...................
Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?
Leila : (4)..........., he isn't. He's not here. He's working today.
Judy : What's your mother doing?
Leila : She's reading a (5)..............................

3-Emad : What is your father's job, Adham?
Adham : He is a (1) ....
Emad : (2)................... does he work?
Adham : He works in (3) a.......................
Emad :What (4) ....he do?
Adham : He teaches Arabic to students.
Emad : Does he (5)................. his work?
Adham: Yes, he likes his work very much.

4-Toka : Hello, Sara. What are you doing?
Sara : I'm looking at my photo album.
Toka : Can I see your photos?
Sara : Sure. This a (1).............................of me and my friends.
Toka : It's beautiful.
Sara : It (2)...............................when we were on the school trip.
Toka : Tell me about your friends.
Sara : In the (3)........................is my friend Mona. She was in front of us.
Toka : Who's the girl (4).................................the left?
Sara : She's Dalia. She's in the (5).................. T-shirt.

5-Randa : You look happy, Leila. What's the matter?
Leila : I've passed my driving test.
Randa : (1)............................| Do you have a car?
Leila : Yes, my uncle has just bought a new car. He's going to give, me his old one.
Randa : That's great (2).......................... !
Leila : So, would you (3)......................to go for a drive on Saturday?
Randa : Yes, I'd love to. (4).........................will you go?
Leila : Well, we could have a picnic and go to the Pyramids.
Randa : (5).............................time will you come?
Leila : I'll come for you at about 11 o'clock.

6-Ali : Hi, how are you?
Jack: Hi. I'm (1).................... thanks.
Ali : Excuse me, (2).....................is your name?
Jack: I'm Jack. What's yours?
Ali : I'm Ali. (3)..................are you from, Jack?
Jack: I'm from America. I'm new here.
Ali : What are you (4)....................in the university?
Jack: I'm studying Biology. What about you?

Ali : Biology is a very interesting field of study, but I'm studying business
Jack: I (5).....................to see you again soon.

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

1.My name's Sherief. I love football. I am a great fan of all football teams. I am also interested in cars. I'm crazy about driving and I also enjoy fixing cars. When I was ten, I had many toy cars. I played with them, repaired the ones my friends broke. I also helped my dad fix his car. So, I want to become a mechanic and open up my own shop. My parents are happy with my choice, too. They think it's important that I do a job that I like. I have a good job now and I really enjoy it. I'm planning to get married soon. Who knows, maybe I will have a car shop in the future.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which sport does Sherief like?.........................
2. What do Sherief's parents think of his choice to be a mechanic?
3. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?........

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The best title for this passage is..........
a) Sherief's job choice b) Cars in our life
c) Sherief and football d) Sherief and his friends
5. Sherief wants to have a...........in the future.
a) car b)toy c) toy car d) car shop
6. Sherief helped his dad............his car.
a) fix b) wash c) push d) drive

2-Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read
for enjoyment just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive

A) Answer the following questions

1-How is reading a helpful habit ?
....
2-Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place?
....
3-How can you remember what you read?
....

: B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d

4-What do you think the word " Others " refer to ?
a) goals b) people c) points d) glasses
5-The underlined word " enjoyment " means…………………
a) discussion b) mysteries c) sadness d) pleasure
6-The word improves means to make it ………………
a) bad b) better c) worse d) sad

3-Omar decided that he wanted to be a doctor when he grows up He made his decision after seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China. So, Omar worked hard at school, passed all his exams and went to university to study to be a doctor. He



spent most of his time working, and had time to make many good friends. When he finished, he found a job as a doctor working in a village in northern India. He worked with a group of older doctors and a young doctor. Most of the time, they worked in the small village hospital, but on two days a week
they went to a nearby town and helped the Indian doctors who worked there. One day, when Omar was working in the larger hospital, a young man came in with a broken leg. He wasn't Indian. When the man saw Omar, he said, "Omar!
Do you remember me? We were in the same secondary school!"

A) Answer the following questions:
1-When did Omar decide he wanted to be a doctor?
2-Where did the doctor on the television programme work?
3-What was wrong with the young man who came into the hospital?
B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
4 In which part of India was the village where Omar worked?
a) The capital. b) The north. c) The south. d) The east.
5 Who did Omar work with at first in India?
a) Other doctors. b) Some older and younger doctors,
c) Older doctors. d) A group of friends.
6 How did the young man in hospital know Omar?
a) They were together in the same school.
b) Their parents were friends.
c) They played for the same football team.
d) They met at the airport.

4-If you want to be good at English, the best thing you can do is to build up your words. First of all, you should read a lot. You can read short stories, comics, newspapers, magazines, etc.As you read, you can guess the meanings of new words. If you cannot, then look them up in a dictionary. Another way is to watch movies in English. Keep a vocabulary notebook and write down a few words each day. You should revise <u>them</u>. In my opinion, to speak to people all you need is to use the words you learned. Practice makes perfect
, A) Answer the following questions:
1. What is the main idea of the passage?.................
2. What is the most important thing when you speak to people?.
3. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?.....
B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
4. Don't stop if you read a word you don't understand, you can the meaning of new words.
a) guess b.write c .say d) read
5. You should keep a notebook for new…….to help you to learn new vocabulary.
a) letters b)words c. passages d) grammar
6. The word "movies" is another word for.
a.books b.films c.dictionaries d. stories

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
1- Aya is a nurse. She helps her............to get better.
a) illnesses b) patients c) medicines d) diseases
2 Falafel is a/an..........meal in Egypt.
a) international b) traditional c) modern d) new
3 She works in a hospital. She is working in the children's...............at the moment.
a) word b) award c) ward d) world
4- You mustn't...........you car here. It's not allowed.
a) come b) park c) bark d) carry
5-He sells many things in the street. He has a small................



a) basket b)wall c) stall d) farm

6- My little brother is very .... He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! WB

a. dangerous b. boring c. lazy d. active

7-We need a computer engineer to.............our computer because it doesn't work. WB

a) make b) do c) play d) repair

8-I can't come to the park because I ....the house today. WB

a. clean b. make c. do d. stay

9-Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use.......... WB

a. food stall b. colours c. sign language d. sports

10-Nabila feels ill, so she ....in bed this morning. WB

a. clean b. spend c. do d. stay

11-On Saturday, I usually..........time with my cousins. WB

a. make b. spend c. do d. stay

12-What time do you............. your homework after school? WB

a. make b. clean c. do d. stay

13-It is usually easy to....... with people in other countries if you speak English. WB

a. telephone b. spend c. write d. communicate

14- He answers customers' calls in a big store. He is a.....worker.

a) call-centre b) centre c) ship d) caller

15- The police officer drives around the city to......sure that people are safe.

a) take b) do c) make d) have

16 Children should be careful when they buy things from a street-food.........

a) buyer b) seller c) worker d) waiter

17- He likes drawing. He wants to be a/an........

a) teacher b) doctor c) engineer d) artist

18 a..........person is a person who can't hear.

a) blind b) weak c) deaf d) strong

19 She is learning........She wants to improve her handwriting.

a) technology b) biology c) geography d) calligraphy

20 He lives next door. He is my......

a) neighbour b) classmate c) servant d) patient

21 My mother asked me to buy her two.........of beans.

a) pieces b) slices c) bottles d) tins

22- I always get up early to......ready for school.

a) get b) make c) do d)have

23- He helped his father to.......the hole in the roof of the house.

a) have b) hurt c)take d) repair

24- Children like to go......school trips.

a) on b) at c) in d)by

25 My father........me a surprise when he bought me a new bike.

a) borrowed b) lent c) gave d) took

26 To get a good job, you should have many.......

a) skulls b) skills c) scales d) presents

27 My sister likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes.

a) swimming b) seeing c) sewing d) sawing

28-Children should be careful when they use the knife because it's very.

a) quick b)wet c) sharp d)hard

29 You can catch a plane from a/an.................. WB

a. station b. port c.airport d. hospital

30 When you invite a person to your house, they are your .... WB

a. grass b. guests c.guess d. glass

31 When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a .... WB

a. suitcase b. suit c.shopping bag d. handbag

32 My friend's sister is going to get married, so he invited me to her..

a) wedding b) birthday c) picnic d) journey
33- My sister is sitting under the tree. She is....a selfie.
a) doing b) taking c) making d) getting
34-We went on a trip in the .... and slept in tents
a. castle b. cave c. tower d. desert
35-You shouldn't leave a child .... in the house.
a) lonely b) alone c) along d) alike
36-A...................someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
a) child b) teenager c) toddler d) seller
37-It's .... for teenagers to get worried or to feel sad sometimes.
a) happy b) nature c) normal d) better
38-His parents were very .... about his prize.
a) pleased b) worried c) sad d) normal
39-It's his favourite show because it always.............him laugh
a-walks b-takes c-makes d-goes
40- I'm waiting excitedly to get ....a plane for the fist time.
a- into b- off c- on d- out of
41- I went with my mother to the market. It was very busy. There were lots of...........
a) sellers b) crowds c) messengers d) workers
42) Every teacher should.............students kindly.
a) hurt b) wave c) treat d) hit
43- The zebra has.............skin.
a) heavy b) colourful c) striped d) plain
44) I tike watching films for Ahmed Helmy. He's really.........
a) funny b) boring c)sad d) difficult
45 He wants to be a pilot to............a plane.
a) ride b) drive c) fly d) catch
46 You should be..............with your neighbours.
a) friendly b) ugly c) rude d) lazy
47To be.............is to be happy about the good things in your life.
a) lonely b) worried c) grateful d) greedy
48 Students who can't see well should sit in the..........of the class.
a) foreground b) background c) underground d) playground
49 It's kind to smile.......the person you meet.
a) in b) to c)at d)of
50. If there is a problem with your computer system, call the computer .... for help .
a)doctor b) nurse c) waiter d) engineer
51 It's a.........that you don't help your parents.
a) shame b) happiness c) joy d)fun
52 I I .... you are enjoying your trip.
a) want b) hope c) show d) pass
53 I'm so happy to see you after these long years. I really.....you.
a) lose b) win c) earn d) miss
54 I'm so happy. I have................my exams.
a) succeeded b) passed c) won d)earned
55 Try to .... the meaning of this word.
a) Talk b)Make c)read d) Guess
56 I often help my mum...........our food.
a) prepare b) repair c) sell d) do
57 Teachers should speak kindly.........their students.
a) at b)for c) to d) by
58 Everyone congratulated me...............passing my maths test.
a) on b) at c) with d} by
59 My last trip was..........I'll go there again.

a) boring b) amazing c) terrible d) bad

60 We always go to our football...........to keep fit.

a) practise b) practice c) fan d) experience

61 After the match, the...........told me that I would be in the football team.

a) worker b) coach c) surgeon d) volunteer

Grammar

المضارع البسيط تم شرحة من قبل

The present continuous المضارع المستمر

١. التكوين Form:

١ـ في حالة الإثبات: يتكون المضارع المستمر من (am, is, are + verb + ing)

I → am
He, She, It → is
We, You, They → are
} + (v + ing).

- Listen! She is playing the piano.
- They are cleaning the garden now

٢ـ في حالة النفي: يتكون المضارع المستمر من (am, is, are + not + verb + ing)

I → am not
He, She, It → isn't
We, You, They → aren't
} + (v + ing).

٣ـ في حالة السؤال: يتكون المضارع المستمر من (am, is, are + inf...+ verb + ing)

What (كلمة الاستفهام) { is → he, she, it / Are → we, you, they } + (v + ing)...?

e.g - Are They playing tennis now? - No, they aren't.
- What are you doing now? - I'm reading a lesson.

ملاحظات:

١ـ إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف (e) ، نحذف (e) ونضع (ing) مثل :-

move → moving come → coming live → living bake → baking

ما عدا .

dye يصبغ → dyeing singe يحرق → singeing be → being

٢-إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوقاً بحرف متحرك واحد(a – e – i – o – u)يُكرر الحرف الأخير ونضع (ing) مِثل :-

cut → cutting put → putting get → getting drop→ dropping run→ running

- ما عدا :

remember →remembering visit → visiting listen → listening
happen → happening enjoy → enjoying snow → snowing

٣-إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوقاً بحرفان متحركان ، نضع(ing) مِثل :-

eat → eating read → reading need → needing *see → seeing*

٤-إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ie تحذف، ونضع(ying) مِثل :-

lie → lying die → dying tie→ tying

٢. الاستخدام Usage:



١. نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث أثناء الكلام.



E.g. they <u>are playing</u> football now.
➔My brother <u>is reading</u> a book at the moment
➔She <u>isn't working</u> at the hospital today.



٢ـمع الاحداث او الافعال المؤقتة

They are painting the school this week.

٣ـالاحداث غير المكتملة ومستمرة حتى الان

My sister is learning to dance.

٣. الكلمات الدالة Key words:

الكلمات التالية كلها كلمات دالة على المضارع المستمر:

(now الآن - at the moment في هذه اللحظة ـ Look! انظر – at present الآن –
Listen! أنصت - Look out! – Watch out! احترس/احذر- today اليوم)

Adverbs of manner

ـ الصفة هى كلمة تصف اسماً ، ولها نفس الشكل (التكوين) فى المفرد والجمع ، والصفات يمكن أن تسبق الاسم اوتاتى بعدة ويكون قبلها (v to be): ahmed is a careful driver. The weather is hot

⇐⇐ الظروف أو الأحوال هى عبارة عن كلمات تصف فعلا وتاتى بعده.

Ahmed walks slowly
Hany speaks very angrily.

الكثير من الظروف وخاصة ظروف الطريقة تتكون بإضافة (ly) للصفة:

adverb	adjective	adverb	adjective
kindly	kind	quietly	quiet
loudly	loud	quickly	quick
difficultly	difficult	slowly	slow

⇐إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ (y) تُحذف الـ (y) ويضاف(ily)

happy	happily	busy	busily
easy	easily	lazy	lazily

⇐إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ (e) يُضاف (ly) ولكن يُستثنى من هذه القاعدة كلمة(true – truly)

nice	nicely	sure	surely

⇐إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ (le) تُحذف الـ (e) ويضاف(y)

comfortable	comfortably	possible	possibly

⇐إذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ (l) تُضاف (ly)

useful	usefully	historical	historically
beautiful	beautifully	careful	carefully

⇐بعض الظروف(شاذة) لها نفس شكل (تكوين) الصفة و هى متشابهة فى المعنى

late	early	hard	fast
high	low	free	daily

ex➔ amir is a fast runner. He runs fast
➔Enas is a hard worker. . She works hard.

لاحظ ان good تتحول الى well عندما تستخدم ظرف

He is a good teacher . (well) - He teaches well.

1-Sami ....sign language at school now. SB
a-learns b-learning c-learn d-is learning
2-Mr Usman ....in a lovely flat. SB
a-lives b-living c-live d-is living
3-Eman and her neighbours................ Mr Usman's flat. SB
a-are repairing b-repair c-repairs d-is repairing
4-What ....Manal making for her uncle ? SB
a-do b-does c-is d-are
5-I always...................milk for breakfast. SB

a-am drinking b-drink c-drinks d- drinking

6-Ali..................a jacket today because it is very hot. WB

a-not wear b-isn't wearing c-don't wear d- doesn't wear

7- My father ....in a bank in the city centre.

a. works b. worked c. am working d. work

8- Amr ....to work by train every day.

a. traveling b. travels c. is traveling d. travel

9- I can't come to the phone now. I ....a shower.

a. am having b. have c. will have d. am doing

10- We can't play tennis today because it ....

a. rains b. rained c. is raining d. rain

11- What do you do after school? - I ....a nap.

a. usually took b. took usually c. take usually d. usually take

12-My father ....me to school.

a taking b sometimes takes c sometimes take d is sometimes taking

13) On Sundays, they..............volleyball in physical education class.

a. plays b.play c. will be played d. are playing

14. Hany often go to school on foot, but today his father.............. him to school.

a) drives b) was driving c) is driving d) driving

15..............sitting next to your best friend ? SB

a. You do b. do You c. Are you d. You are

16................the students in your class working ? WB

a. Are b. Have c. Can d. Do

17. She isn't .... at the hospital today.

a. work b. working c. works d. worked

18. What................... doing at the moment ?

a. they are b. are they c. they were d. were they

19-Birds always ....in the early morning.

a singing b to sing c sings d sing

20-Sama and Hend always.............in the home.

a. help b. helping c. helps d. to help

21-Basel is a computer engineer. He usually .... computers. WB

a. repair b. is repairing c. repairing d. repairs

22-The police officer.......... a school today. WB

a. visiting b. visits c.is visiting d.visit

23-Nader............ in the shop, but his brother is ill so he is helping there today. WB

a. isn't usually working b. not usually work c.don't usually work d. doesn't usually work

24-My friend sews................................. SB

a-bad b-worst c-worse d- badly

25-Mr Ahmed speaks English.............................. SB

a-well b-good c-best d- better

26-The cat is sitting in the sun.................... SB

a-laziest b-lazier c-lazy d- lazily

27-The teacher treats all her children................... SB

a-kinder b-kindest c-kindly d- kind

28-She is laughing ....in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. SB

a-carefully b-slowly c-loudly d- hungrily

29-We're sitting ....on the rocks because they are sharps ! SB

a-carefully b-loudly c-excitedly d- hungrily

30-It's at the end of the day and the guests are .... leaving.. SB

a-slowly b-loudly c-excitedly d- hungrily

31-I'm sitting under the tree and ....eating my lunch. SB

a. badly b-loudly c-excitedly d- hungrily



32- Hamid did very……………in his exams last week.
a- well b- fast c- bad d- good
33- Huda's uncle always sings …………when he's working.
a- slow b- happy c- happily d- quiet
34 Amal always paints……………….
a- beautiful b- happy c- beautifully d- good
35- The class listened………………. to their teacher.
a- beautifully b- quickly c- easily d- carefully
36- He climbed the hill……………. . He wasn't tired at all.
a badly b friendly c hardly d easily
37. At the end of the school year, some students try ………to make up for the lost time.
a) hardship b) hardly c) hard d) hardest
38. The driver of the school bus drives ………………………………. .
a) carefully b) careful c) careless d) slow
39. He is eating ………………………….. .
a) hungry b) angry c) hungrily d) angrily
40-He arrived an hour …………………....... but he caught the bus .
a) late b) lately c) fast d) hard
41- That bird is flying very............ WB
a-careful b-quick c-loud d- fast
42-the guests found their hotel.............after they bought a map of the city.
a) easy b) easier c) ease d) easily
43 It is important to drive .... when it is raining. WB
a-carefully b-quickly c-loudly d- carelessly
44 Our football team will win because they are playing very............ WB
a- well b- quick c- bad d- good
45-Please, speak ………………, people at the back can't hear you.
a-politely b-wisely c-loudly d- carelessly

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.






1.You........... (write) an email now.
2.I ....(drink) tea at the moment
3-Nabil and tamer.............. (not) watch TV everyday.
4...........(Do) you wearing a school uniform?
5- Mr Osman..........(live)in a lovely flat.
6-At the moment, Hany............ (playing) football in the club.
7- Manal and Mona..........(study)-calligraphy every day.
8- ....(Does) Ali playing football now ?
9-Does he often.......... (goes) out this evening ?
10- My friend sews ....(bad)،
11- The children are singing........................ (loud) in the playground
12- As there was much time, we walked to school............ (slow)
13-Every one admires her because she plays the violin very.......... (good).
14-The lesson is easy. I can study it..........(easy)
15-She looked........................ (happy) at the children.
16-I'm waiting........... (excited) to get on a plane or the first time.
17-He is shouting and speaking.............(angry).
18- She usually arrives.............. (lately).
19-Heba is a........... (love)student. she is kind and pleasant
20-My sister usually.........(go) to school by bus.
21-My brother............... (play) football at the moment.
22-They are singing ....(happy).
23.Eman and her neighbours..........(repair) Mr Osman's flat now.
24.A The teacher treats all her children.......... (kind)
25.Why .... (be) you laughing at the moment?
26.Fady ....(not wear) a jacket today because it is very hot.
27. The police officer .... (talk)at a school today..
28.Nader.......................... (not usually work) in the shop .

6-Write a paragraph of six (80) words on

"Which job would you like to do ? "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

"How to be happy in your life"

....
....
....
....
....

....
....
....
....
....
....

your problems at school

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 3 Great jobs

surgeon	جراح	brain	المخ	charity	مؤسسة خيرية
scientist	عالم	heart	القلب	The countryside	الريف
Charity worker	فاعل خيرى	lungs	الرئتين	emergency	حالة طوارىء
Sports coach	مدرب رياضى	Breathe	يتنفس	Natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
win	يفوز	pump	يضخ/مضخة	burns	حروق
handball	كورة يد	blood	دم	organisation	منظمة
junior	مبتدى/ناشىء	earthquake	زالزال	patient	مريض
senior	كبير سنا/راشد	heroic	بطولى	Stop infection	يمنع العدوى
competition	منافسة	society	مجتمع	rubbish collectors	عمال جمع القمامة
hero	بطل	research	يجرى بحث	Street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع
treatment	علاج	serious	جاد/خطر	manager	مدير
medicine	طب/دواء	cut	جرح/يجرح/	scared	مرعوب
score	يسجل/ يحرز	Do experiments	يجرى تجارب علمية	Fire fighter	رجل الاطفاء
volunteer	متطوع	Sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	Police officer	ظابط شرطة
furniture	اثاث	Do things	يفعل اشياء	Proud of	فخور ب
jewellery	مجوهرات	agree	يوافق	Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريون

2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Enas : Hello, Huda. Can ! ask you some questions?
Huda : Hi, Enas. Sure.
Enas : Where (1)...............................your parents live when they were young?



Huda :They (2)..............................in Tanta.
Enas : What did your grandfather do?
Huda : He (3)............................a farmer.
Enas : Really? (4)...........................he grow fruits?
Huda :Yes, of course.
Enas : What about your grandmother?
Huda : She (5).............................work. She was a housewife.

2-A reporter makes a report about footballers.
Reporter : Hello (1)………………. Is your name?
Footballer : Nasser hany
Reporter : What did you (2) ……………to do 20 years ago?
Footballer :I used to (3)………….football
Reporter :(4)………….you earn much money from it?
Footballer : No, I didn't. we played because we loved playing for our country.
Reporter : I wish you more success.
footballer : (5)......................

3-Mazin : Hello, Hany.
Hany : Hello, Mazin.
Mazin : Did you (1)........................to live in Cairo when you were young?
Hany : (2)............................I used to live in Giza.
Mazin : Did you use to (3).................................to school?
Hany : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.
Mazin : What hobby (4).....................................you use to do?
Hany : I used to read stories. What about you?
Mazin : I used to (5)...............................
Hany : Great

4-Omar : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.
Ali : What do you(1)............... ?
Omar : I(2).................... , we need rubbish collectors.2
Ali : Sorry, I don’t (3)................
Omar : I mean they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them!
Ali : That’s(4)................. . What about street cleaners?
Omar : I’m not (5)............... . What do you mean?
Ali : I mean, street cleaners are also important.
Omar : Yes, that’s true! They help to keep our cities clean.
Ali : I agree!

5-Samy : Do you know that the Egyptian football team won the Africa Cup of Nations?
Aya : That’s great, but when (1)............ they win it?
Samy : The last time was (2)................. 2010.
Aya : Oh, no! That was many years ago.
Samy : Yes, but they (3).......... the cup three times one after the other.
Aya : I don’t understand you. (4)............ do you mean?
Samy : I mean that Egypt won the cup in 2006, 2008 and 2010.
Aya : Wow! That was a great achievement!



Samy : You are right.
Aya : I'm (5)............... of the Egyptian football team.

6-Tourist : Is Elephantine Island a good place for fish?
Tarek : Do you (1)..........................you want to go fishing?
Tourist :Yes. That's (2)......................I like fishing.
Tarek : Yes. It is a popular place for people who like fishing. Have you thought about going to the desert?
Tourist :{3)........................do you mean?
Tarek : Well, you can go to the White Desert. It's very exciting.
Tourist : Did you (4).......................go there?
Tarek : Yes. I used to go to Farafra. It's a place in the White Desert.
Tourist : I (5)......................what you mean

7.Dalia : Can I ask you some questions?
Eman : Sure.
Dalia : What do (1)............................do to our body?
Eman : Lungs take in air and help us to breathe.
Dalia : Can smokers(2).......................well?
Eman : Of course not.
Dalia : What (3)................the brain do?
Eman : It tells the parts of our (4) ....what to do.
Dalia : What does the heart do?
Eman : It (5)...............blood around the body.

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

A long time ago, there was a young boy who used to come and play around a huge apple tree every day. He climbed the tree, ate the apples and took a nap under the shadow. He loved the tree and the tree loved to play with him. The boy got older and didn't play around it every day.
Every time, when he came back, he was sad and didn't want to play with the tree. However, the tree was ready to do anything to make him happy. She gave him all the apples to sell them and buy toys. Then, she told him to cut her branches to build a house and at last, he took her trunk to build a boat and go sailing. Finally, he came back after many years but she told him that she had nothing left except her root. The man told her that he only wanted a place to rest. The man sat down and the tree was very happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the boy use to do when he was young?
....
2. Why did the tree give the boy all the apples?
....
3. Do you think trees are useful? Why?
....

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The tree gave the boy her .... to build a boat.
a. apples b. branches c. trunk d. root
5. The main idea of the passage is to be ....
a. careless b. helpful c. unkind d. sad





6.the underlined pronoun " her " refers to...

a. girl b. place c. tree d. man

2-My name is Sandy. I used to work in a bank, but now I work as a secretary in a company. I left the bank and joined the company seven years ago. I enjoy working here and I have made lots of friends. I met my husband in this company and we got married last year. Our manager, Mr Medhat, is a very nice man. He gave us three weeks off and he bought us a very nice wedding gift. When I am not working, I love spending time in my garden. I grow plants and vegetables. When I was a little girl, 1 wanted to be a gardener. I always helped my parents in the garden. My husband likes gardening, too. We went to the garden centre last weekend and bought some new plants. My husband planted a new apple tree and some roses in the garden. I watered the tomato plants and the strawberries.

A) Answer the following questions:

1 Why is Mr Medhat a kind man?..

2. Where does Sandy's husband work?...

3 What does the underlined word "gift" mean?...

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4.Sandy used to help her parents in the.........

a) park b) garden c) farm d) barn

5. Sandy wanted to.............when she was young.

a) get married b) work in a bank c) be a gardener d) plant apple trees

6. ....planted the apple tree.

a) The husband b) Sandy c) The manager d) None of them

3-One day, Mr Adel took his wife, Mrs. Amira and his children to the city park in order to have a picnic. They drove to the park early in the morning and arrived there at about 10 a.m. Mr Adel and his wife sat under a tree. They ate, drank and read newspapers. Their children ran and jumped on the grass. Amira decided to take some photos of them. While she was talking her camera out of her bag, she heard a cry. An old lady was running after a thief who took her mobile phone and started to run away. Amira quickly took three photos of him. When the police arrived, she showed them the photos. A few hours later, the police caught the thief. They gave the lady her old phone and thanked Amira.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Mr Adel and his family go on a picnic?

....

2. How did Mrs Amira help the lady?

....

3. What does the underlined word “them” refer to?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

4. Mr Adel and his family went to the park by ....

a. train b. metro c. car d. plane

5. Amira was a .... woman.

a. lazy b. clever c. stupid d. helpless

6.the thief took ....from the old lady.

a. photos b. camera c. phone d. newspaper

4-Omar and Salma went to Greece on holiday. They stayed in a nice, big hotel. In the mornings, they had breakfast at the hotel and in the evenings, they ate dinner at



restaurants. One night, they went to a famous restaurant and they sat outside because it was lovely warm weather. They ordered fish with salad and chips. The waiter served it. They saw a big sign. It said, 'Don't feed the cats.' Soon, they saw a beautiful cat. It came up to their table. It sat beside Salma.

Salma cut a piece of fish and gave it to the cat. It ate the fish. The waiter was not happy! The cat did not wait for another piece. It jumped on the table, took the fish and quickly jumped back down. At that moment, the waiter came back out. He saw the cat with the fish. He looked at Salma, but he didn't say a thing. His look said it all.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where did Omar and Salma go on holiday?...

2- Why did they sit outside the famous restaurant?..

3-Do you think the waiter was angry ?Why? ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The waiter gave Salma a bad
a meal b fish c cat d look

4- The restaurant was..................... to put the sign.
a bad b right c wrong d rude

5- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a fish b table c cat d piece

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. The Egyptian handball team won an important..........in2020. SB
a) development b) experiment c) competition d) completion

2. A............knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. WB
a) sports coach b) surgeon c) police officer d) hero

3- A/An ....does experiments to study and find out about how things work. WB
a.event b.scientist c.worker d.hero

4- A.................. is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something WB
a..team b.charity c.coach d.competition

5- A/An........... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about. WB
a. organisation b. emergency c. charity d. crescent

6- The................ is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. WB
a.mountain b.earthquake c.countryside d.crescent

7- Mona's mother is a/an .... at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work. WB
a.coach b. volunteer c.patient d.adult

8- You can only open this door in a/an........................... , such as a fire. WB
a pleasure b charity c emergency d organisation

9- A .... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. SB
a.prison b.charity c.museum d.theater

10- The................... tells the parts of our body what to do. SB
a.heart b.stomach c.eye d.brain

11-Lina's cousin in hospital with an eye.............. WB
a. infected b.infect c.infection d. infectious

12-Adam fell off his bike and has a big...............on his arm. WB
a.burn b.infection c.cut d.pump

13- The lungs take in air and help us to .... WB
a.breeze b.breath c.freeze d.breathe

14- A teaches people how to play or improve a sport. WB
a sports coach b scientist c teacher d professor

15- I always give money to a/an.................. that helps poor children. WB
a medicine b library c history d charity

16- A.................. helps people or animals that need help. WB

a.charity worker b.sports coach c.nuclear scientist d.fruit seller
17- When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the................ ? WB
a.side b.earth c.countryside d.continent
18.My sister has passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very...........of her. WB
a.worried b. pleased c.proud d. crowded
19- The heart .... blood around the body. WB
a.takes in b.drinks c.pumps d.plants
20. My brother is only 10 years. He wants to join the......team.
a)small b) old c) junior d) senior
21. My grandfather is my.......He helped many people in his village and built a school.
a) thief b) hero c) player d) driver
22Dr. Magdy Yacoub is a world famous heart..........
a) worker b) scientist c) waiter d) surgeon
23-This great charity helps children................ heart problems.
a) with b) by c)in d) on
24. A player should practise more to........his skills in a sport.
a) lose b) improve c) climb d) make
25. Scientists do many experiments to find........for many illnesses.
a) treatments b) developments c) moments d) monuments
26. When I was little, a thief. ....me and a police officer saved me and arrested him.
a) attacked b) attracted c) won d) earned
27Our team won the match...........Tunisia.
a) away b) across c) again d) against
28. My father died from............ is a dangerous disease.
a) cancer b) flu c) kidney d) heart
29. In handball, players score by........the ball into a goal.
a) touching b) throwing c) heading d) saving
30.Mohamed Salah plays............Liverpool team in England.
a) in b) on c) to d) for
31. Working in a group is called..................
a) homework b) manual work c) teamwork d) housework
32.Scientists do experiments to........... how things work.
a) find out b) improve c) practise d) touch
33. Everybody works hard to be.............
a) success b) successful c) succeed d) successfully
34. He had a terrible accident and.............a leg.
a) won b) lost c) missed d) threw
35They started a..........to help people from poor families with the disease.
a) foundation b) solution c) pollution d) introduction
36- Omar Samra became the first Egyptian .... Mount Everest
a-climbed b-climb c-climbing d-to climb
37- We always............... experiments at the school lab every Monday.
a.make b.do c.look d.fly
38-Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work .... a surgeon for a long time ago.
a.alike b.as c.like d.such
39- .... is a sport with seven players in a team.
a.Tennis b.Boxing c.Snorkelling d.Handball
40- Huda went to a surgeon to......... the cut in her hand.
a.cook b.break c.sew d.plant
41- The little child .... off his bike and broke his leg.
a.felt b.filled c.failed d.fell
42-Women usually wear............. which is made of gold.
a.Furniture b.Jewellery c. Information d.clothes
43.My house is very big. It has a lot of.......



a) medicine b) experience c) information d) furniture

44- She helped to look.................. poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.
a.for b.in c. from d.after

45. I always feel........of dark places.
a) happy b) scared c) hungry d) busy

46.Our streets are clean because..........don't leave any paper there.
a) rubbish collectors b) volunteers c) shop workers d) sellers

47 My neighbour, Mr Said, is...........He saved a little girl from fire.
a) safe b) dangerous c) serious d) brave

48 My mother did some.............work that made me proud of her.
a) dangerous b) boring c) heroic d) scary

49 I went to the museum and saw many...........of Ancient Egyptians there.
a) statues b) emails c) selfies d) villas

50. My father is the most important doctor at his hospital. He is the.....
a) worker b) manager c) cleaner d) waiter

51- Street.............. help to keep our cities clean.
a.builders b.makers c.walkers d.cleaners

52 My father is the person who........for our needs.
a) does b) makes c) buys d) Pays

53. A/An..........is the person who helps people when there is fire.
a) firefighter b) engineer c) surgeon d) waiter

54.Milk is useful...................children.
a.for b.in c. from d.after

55- What's the............ you're leaving your new job, Sameh?
a.season b.pity c.reason d.question

56- My father works as a/an................... in a big factory.
a.manager b.teacher c.tour guide d.farmer

57- Good people work .... to achieve their goals.
a.hardly b.difficult c.easily d.hard

58. We should......... our country clean.
a)keep b)save c) live d) store

59- my friend samy was born............... a rich family.
a) at b)in c) on d)into

60- Would you like to see the................ match in the stadium? I have tickets.
a final b fun c total d signal

grammar



The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1-Form التكوين

📖 يتكون الماضى البسيط من (التصريف الثانى للفعل) بإضافة dأو ed او ied للفعل إذا كان **فعل عادى** (منتظم) مثل Play – played / help – helped

📖 أما إذا كان **فعل شاذ** (غير منتظم) يُحفظ مثل see - saw / go - went / have – had.

2-Usage الاستخدام

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن:

١. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

E.g. E.g. I <u>played</u> football yesterday. I <u>visited</u> my aunt a week ago.
I was very tired this morning.

٢. عادة في الماضي (غالباً مع كلمة "used to" والتي معناها " اعتاد أن").

E.g. When I was in Paris, I <u>used to play(played)</u> tennis.

3-Key words الكلمات الدالة

Yesterday امس / (مدة زمنية)ago منذ / last+مدة زمنية الماضى / in+ سنة ماضية (in 2009)
in the past فى الماضى/ When I was young عندما كنت صغير/ once ذات مرة

٤. النفى Negative:

فى حالة النفى نستخدم (المصدر + didn't)

فاعل + did not(didn't) + V.(inf) مصدر الفعل

→ I didn't play football yesterday. → he didn't go to school last week.

لاحظ : هناك اشكال اخرى للافعال فى زمن الماضى التى لايمكن تحول الى النفى باستخدام didn't مثل:

was→ wasn't / were→ weren't / could→ couldn't

➲Ali wasn't at the cinema last week. ➲They weren't at school yesterday.

➲ When I was young , I couldn't ride a bike.

٥. السؤال Question:



عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الاتى :

Did +. فاعل + inf.....مصدر الفعل?

→Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Were /Was +فاعل +. (صفة او اسم او حرف جر + مكان) ?

→Were you at the cinema last week? Yes, I was / No wasn't

عند تكوين السؤال ب اداة استفهام :

.اداة الاستفهام + did + فاعل + inf.....مصدر الفعل?

→What time did you go to bed? Why did he buy that shirt?

→ where did you go yesterday? I went to the club

.اداة استفهام +Were /Was +فاعل +. (صفة او اسم او حرف جر + مكان) ?

→How was your birthday? Where was Samy's old house?

Used to + inf اعتاد ان

١.فى الاثبات تستخدم used to (لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن)

فاعل + used to + inf

- I used to play football when I was young. - He used to be a driver, but now he isn't.
- I used to smoke a packet a day

He used to live in the countryside.

٢-في النفي نستخدم

فاعل +Didn't use to + inf

- He didn't use to play football when he was young.

I didn't use to know much about my family history.

٣- في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل نستخدم

Did + فاعل + use to + inf ?

- Did she use to live in Cairo? yes, she did. / No, she didn't

Did you use to get up early? yes, I did / No , I didn't



٣- في حالة السؤال باداة استفهام

اداة استفهام + did + فاعل + use to + inf ?

What sport did you use to play?

I used to play football.

ملاحظات

لاحــظ الاتى

1. He used to be thin. (but now he isn't thin / but now he is fat)
2. He used to smoke (but now he doesn't smoke).

(am / is / are) / (get) used to (v + ing) معتاد على

صفــة (تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر)

I'm used to playing football . = I usually play football.

(be) used to + inf = (be) used for + (v+ing)

فعل أساسي في جملة مبنية للمجهول و معناه يُستخــدَم لكي

- Wood is used to make furniture. = - Wood is used for making furniture.

1. In 2016, a shark.......Omar and he lost a leg. WB
a) is attacking b) attacking c) attacked d) attacks
9- There.............. a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three. WB
a weren't b didn't c isn't d didn't use to be
3.- Egypt's football team..................... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010. WB
a win b won c to win d winning
4- He started playing chess when he was very little and he......... always very good at it. WB
a.does b was c has d were
5.in 1990, He ....the number one chess player in our city. WB
a) is becoming b) becomes c) became d)become
6. Yasser's grandmother.................. work in a hospital. WB
a. used to b. is used c. uses to d. using to
7. Dina .... money to a charity, but now she does. SB
a.didn't use to give b.gave c.doesn't give d.used to give
8. Did Hossam Hassan .... captain of the Egyptian Football team? SB
a.uses to be b.was c.be d.use to be
9- My grandfather .... football when he was young, but he can't walk now. WB
a play b used to play c use to play d plays
10- When she was a child, Yasser's Mum ....play the piano every day. SB
a used to b was used to c was using to d use to
11- Where............... live before you moved to Alexandria? WB
a.are you b.do you c.you used to d.did you use to
12. They............in the countryside, but now they live in the city.
a) used to living b) use to live c) used to live d) using to live
13 ....play computer games when you were younger?
a) Did you used b) Does he use to c) Did you use to d) Did you use

14..I went to Hurghada with my family a.........
a) tomorrow b) next week c) last week d) week ago
15. How…………your weekend?
a. did b. does c. was d. do
16-…………you go to the museum last week?
a-Are b-were c-Did d-do
17-Where…………you yesterday?
a-did b-do c-are d-were
18-Where did you live when you .... a child?



a-were b-are c-was d-is
19-Last summer, my family ……………. a fantastic holiday in Morocco.
a. have b. had c. has d. are having
20-Salah al-Din al-Ayouby-----------------the citadel to protect Cairo.
a- built b- build c - builds d- building
21-Where…………you yesterday?
a-did b-do c-are d-were
22-……………your friends ready for the exam last week?
a-was b-did c-were d-do
23. Mona……….. to school yesterday because she was ill.
a. not come b. doesn't come c. don't come d. didn't come
24-Hany …………at school last Monday.
a-didn't b-doesn't c-wasn't d.hasn't
25 My family…………………… delicious food last week.
a.ate b.eat c.eats d.eating
26-I .... with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.
a-swim b-swam c-swim d-swimming
27- My brother bought his house two years.................... .
a.ago b.last c.once d.since
28. When you were ten, ... you use to live in a different house?
a. did b. does c. doing d. do
29. He used to......................clever when he was young.
a. be b. being c. do d. doing
30. He used to.................... clever things when he was young.
a. be b. being c. do d. doing
31. Did your children use to .... a lot?
a. walk b. walks c. walked d. walking
32. He used to smoke ,but now he .... smoke.
a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. wasn't
33. He used to be lazy , but now he............................
a. is b. isn't c. don't d. doesn't
34- Hany...................... doing his homework an hour ago.
a starts b started c start d starting
35- He ....Aunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983.
a met b was meeting c meets d will meet
36- My father ....us to school as the school bus didn't come.
a drives b drove c drive d driving

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1- I............. (eat) fish last week.
2- who did you............. (seeing) last Monday?
3- she didn't............. (rode) a camel before.
4-We............. (write) in English yesterday.
5-My uncle................. (buy) his house last summer.
6-Hany.................. (don't) play tennis yesterday.
7-Hala ....(be) ill last week.
8. I .... (sleep) in a tent last night
9. We................ (go) into the cave last holiday.
10- Before Yasser's dad got married, he .... (doesn't) use to live in Cairo
11- Where did you............. (went) on holiday last summer
12- What..........(do) you visit last week ?
13-How............. (did)your day yesterday ?
14-He swam in the sea, but he didn't ....(saw) any dolphins.
15- How did you................(used) to go to school?



16- Do you use to have a lot of homework?
17- Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather ....(not)use to know how to drive a car.
18- What was your favourite toy when you ....(be) little?
19-In 1990, he...............(become)the number one chess player in our city.
20-I didn't...............(used) to like salad when I was younger.
21-We used to...........(playing) football.
22-My Uncle Rashid ....(be) born in 1961.
23-I ....(not use) to like fish when I was young.
24-Did you visit the Pyramids when you ....(be) young?

6-Write a paragraph of (90) words on

A person that you are proud of (your hero)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

a great job you like

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

your past habits

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

how life used to be different in ancient Egypt

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit 4 Into the past

arch	قوس	ruins	اطلال	interesting	شيق
castle	قلعة	stadium	استاذ	protect	يحمى
Complete building	مبنى كامل	statue	تمثال	race	سباق
culture	ثقافة	temple	معبد	recommend	يرشح/يوصى ب
entrance	مدخل	theatre	مسرح	review	مقال نقدية
historic	تاريخى	amazing	مذهل	museum	متحف
mosque	مسجد	ancient	قديم/ اثرى جدا	roman	رومانى
national	قومى/وطنى	awesome	رائع	ticket	تذكرة
pray	يصلى	behave	يتصرف	time	عهد/عصر
bowl	سلطانية	The museum of Islamic art	متحف الفن الاسلامى	popular	محبوب/شعبى
coin	عملة معدنية	tool	اداة	senet	لعبة تشبه الشطرنج
figure	شكل	vase	فازة	square	مربع
magazine	مجلة	Web page	صفحة ويب	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير
mask	قناع	chemical	مادة كيميائية	mix	يخلط
necklace	عقد/قلادة	clay	طين صلصال	ring	خاتم
papyrus	ورق البردى	design	تصميم	pot	اناء
company	شركة	debate	مناظرة	maybe	ربما
historic	تاريخى	environment	البيئة	tourism	السياحة
damage	يتلف	Local people	السكان المحليين	tourist	سائح
area	منطقة	pharaoh	فرعون	special	خاص
century	قرن ١٠٠ عام	report	تقرير	Stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
follow	يتبع	ruler	حاكم	war	حرب

2-Complete the following dialogue:

1-Amira .What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?
Hana : Yes, I (1)...................................
Amira : Why do you think that?
Hana . Because tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people.
Amira : 2.................................think so.
Hana : Why not?
Amira : As a lot of money goes to big companies, not (3)...............people.
Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment and the local people.



Amira : I (4)............................agree. Tourists drop rubbish and damage places.
Hana : I see what you (5)............................... , but most tourists behave well.

2-Fady : Hello, Baher. How are you?
Baher : Hi, Fady. Do you (1)................this plan for a new hotel is a good idea?
Fady : I don't think (2) ....It only has jobs for people in the city.
Baher : I don't (3)............More tourists in the area can help the local people.
Fady : Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.
Baher : I see what you (4).................It's important to protect the environment.
Fady : Yes, we should do our best to make it (5)................................
Baher : And we should tell other people to look after it.
Fady : I agree with you. Let's talk about that tomorrow.
Baher : That sounds good.

3-Ticket office : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?
Customer : Good morning. (1)................you tell me your working hours?
Ticket office : (2)...............We're open daily from 9:30 to 6:30.
Customer : (3).................like to know how much the tickets are?
Ticket office : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.
Customer : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?
Ticket office :Yes, or you can buy them online.
Customer : I'd (4)...............to know if I could bring my camera with me.
Ticket office : Of course. But you mustn't take photos inside the museum.
Customer : (5)..................you for your help. Goodbye.

4.Hany : Did you visit Jerash before?
Samy : Sorry, What is Jerash?
Hany : Jerash is a Roman (1) ……………… in Jordan.
Samy : How (2) ……………… is it?
Hany : It is more than 2,000 (3) ……………… old!
Samy : How can I visit it?
Hany : You (4) ……………… buy a ticket before you go in.
Samy : Are there any theatres in Jerash?
Hany : Sure. Jerash has three Roman(5) ………………

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

1-The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,575 designs from more than 80 different countries.
The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in2019. It is **further** from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza, **It** has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.



a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage. ………………………..
2. What do you think of museums? ………………………………
3. How old is the oldest museum? ………………………………….

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The word "further" is the opposite of.......
a. ancient b. nearer c. far d.open
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to........
a. the city centre b.Giza c the old museum d. GEM
6. The museum is a place to keep.................on display.
a.designs b. pyramids c. treasures d. visitors

2.We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that Nearly five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think it helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many People like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people drink tea?...
2. When do people usually drink tea?..
3.What does the underlined pronoun " it " refer to?...

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4.The underlined word "Nearly'1 means.............
a) opposite b) almost c) nearby d) far
5. People usually drink tea with...........when they are tired
a) milk b) orange c) lemon d) leaves
6.Tea is grown in.............
a) Japan b) China c) India d) both b

3.Egypt has a lot of ancient and modern places to visit. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to build. It opened in1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island. There is a restaurant at the top . It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs ! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the Cairo tower stand ? ……………..........................………..
2. How many windows are there on each floor ?……….............…………………
3. What does the underlined word " it " refer to?. ……..........………………………..

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. There are ....stairs
a) 2050 b)5.200 c) 1000 d) 2.500
5. The Cairo tower is ....
a. dangerous b.ugly c fantastic d. small
6. Building the tower started in.............
a) 1961 b)1916 c) 1950 d) 1956

4.Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They usually come to Egypt in winter. They love to enjoy the fine weather. They visit many places in Egypt such as the Cairo Tower, the Pyramids and the temples. They enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan in winter. They usually take photos of the ancient temples in Egypt and they buy many things as souvenirs to remind them of Egypt. Other tourists like the beautiful beaches in Egypt, so they like to come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its fantastic beaches.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which places do tourists come to see in Egypt?..
2. Why do they usually go to Luxor and Aswan in winter?..
3.What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4.Tourists visit Luxor and Aswan in...........
a) summer b) spring c) fall d) winter
5.The underlined word "ancient" means very.............
a) new b)old c) near d) interesting
6. Tourists go to...........to enjoy the beaches there.
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Hurghada d) Cairo

4--choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1 We walked under a big .... before we entered the museum. **WB**
a) arch b)statue c) castle d) mosque
2. This building became .... after an earthquake. **WB**
a) statues b) ruins c) castles d) mosques
3.There are more than 2,000.........................in the museum.. **WB**
a) subjects b) projects c) parts d) objects
4.Heba is not interested ....playing tennis. **WB**
a) on b) in c) with d) to
5 We are proud of our.........handball team. They won the cup.
a) world b) modern c) ancient d) national
6 In the past, people built.......to watch their favourite sports.
a) museums b) mosques c) stadiums d) theatres
7 We bought a new house with a large..........
a) entrance b)wall c) ruin d) castle
8 Children must learn how to........politely all the time.
a) treat b) behave c) do d) make
9 When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful....
a) location b) sight c)view d) review
10-They didn't complete this building at all. These.............are thousands of years old.
a) ruins b) arches c) entrances d) castles
11 This old castle......to the Romans times.
a) gets b) dates c) goes d) jumps
12 When you travel to a historic place, you should.....a guide.
a) make b) get c) teach d) buy
13 Many people are interested.........watching football matches.
a) in b) at c) on d)onto
14 Students usually bring.........lunch with them on a trip.
a) bucket b) packet c) baked d)packed
15 This book is very interesting. I....it to you.
a) recommend b) advise c) tell d)say
16 The trip was..........It was amazing.
a) scary b) pleased c) awesome d) boring

17. We call something is.........when it is very old.
a) new b) modern c) patient d) ancient
18. People build.........to pray in.
a) statues b) ruins c) castles d) mosques
19.The museum is full of........and many other historic objects.
a) theatres b) statues c) stadiums d) castles
20 Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of.........from the Nile.
a) metal b)wool c) clay d) water
21 Ancient Egyptians used..........for writing.
a) papyrus b) wood c) wool d)paper
22 A..........is a piece of metal used as money.
a) pot b) bowl c) can d)coin
23 Some boys wore............on their faces to frighten girls.
a) shorts b) skirts c) masks d) shirts
24 My grandmother gave me a beautiful..........on my birthday which I can wear a round my neck.
a) ring b) watch c) jumper d) necklace
25 My mother wears two...........on her fingers. They are expensive.
a) rings b) watches c) scarfs d) necklaces
26 Bees and ants are small......... WB
a) animals b) birds c) insects d) turtles
27 People wear sunglasses to........their eyes from the sun.
a) affect b) protect c) infect d) give
28 My father's mobile phone........him a lot of money. It's very expensive.
a) cost b) paid c) bought d)sold
29There is a ....of flowers on the table next to my bed.
a) bottle b) vase c) bag d) glass
30 The shop is very crowded today. There are many.........
a) waiters b) customers c) sellers d) objects
31 We go to school every day........holidays.
a) accept b) expect c) except d) aspect
32- There was a...........in our class about how we help the environment.
a)debate b) date c)carpet d) lamp
33.................is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.
a) Infection b) illness c) Pollution d) Tourism
34 We should protect our..........places because they are very important.
a) history b) historian c) geography d) historic
35)Some tourists are careless because they........rubbish in historic places.
a) drop b) make c) lend d) mix
36) Some projects in the area help.........people to find jobs easily.
a) strange b) local c) historic d) natural
37) Some people think that tourists can........important places.
a) attack b) attract c) damage d) debate
38) A...........is a period of 100 years.
a) month b) week c) decade d) century
39- I want to know what happened.............Hazem last night.
a)to b) in c) under d) at
40- My brother works in a big..........that organises holidays.
a) fort b) castle c) palace d) company
41-Muhammad Ali was the.............of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.
a) ruler b) roller c) baker d) waiter
42. This chemical helps to keep ....mosquitos. WB
a) away b) by c) for d) in
43.A ....is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair thing. WB
a) vase b) tap c) tool d) pot

44..A..................is a model of a person. WB
a) figure b) tap c) coin d) pot
45.Popele used bowls to..................ingredients.
a) repair b) mix c) do d) paint
46-..........................are damaging many countries around the world.
a) wars b) weddings c) birthdays d) parties
47.There are ....schools for deaf people who cannot hear.
a) special b) tourist c) crowded d) ugly
48.Tourism is good ....our country
a) at b) with c) for d) to
49.I read an interesting ....about tourism in a magazine
a) debate b) report c) paper d) plan
50.You can see many ....in the museum
a) castles b) prayers c) statues d) arches

grammar

Must / mustn't

must يجب : تدل على وجوب فعل شئ فى الوقت الحاضر – اجبارى أو ضرورى

must + inf

✪ you **must look** right and left before you cross the road.
✪ They **must arrive** on time. .
✪We **must be** careful in the laboratory!

هــام من الضرورى/المهم ان **must = it is necessary/important to + inf**

mustn't لا يجب : تدل على المنع أو التحريم او عدم وجوب فعل شى فى الحاضر

mustn't + inf

☒You **mustn't talk** in the library.
☒in a museum , you **mustn't touch** he objects .
☒We **mustn't talk** to each other in the lesson

السؤال :Question

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / Noنتبع الاتى :

must + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?

➔Must we put the rubbish in the bin ? √- Yes, you must √- No, you mustn't

The past continuous tense الماضى المستمر

١. التكوين :Form

١ـ في حالة الإثبات: يتكون الماضي المستمر من (فاعل + was/were + verb + ing)

➢They **were watching** TV yesterday evening.

٢ـ في حالة النفي: يتكون من

I , He , She, It ⟶ was not
We, You, They ⟶ weren't
} + (v + ing).

➢Jana wasn't making dinner. They weren't swimming

٣- في حالة السؤال: يتكون من



عند تكوين السؤال بهل نتبع الاتى :

Was + (I/he / she / It)+ v + ing ?
Were + (we/you / they)+ v + ing ?

E.g ➢ Was he/she (having lunch)? Yes, he/she was. No, he/she wasn't
➔ Were you watching TV ? yes, I was / No, I wasn't.
➔Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.



عند تكوين السؤال ب كلمة استفهام :

كلمة استفهام

Was + (I/he / she / It)+ v + ing ?
Were + (we/you / they)+ v + ing ?

- What were they doing at 5 yesterday? They were playing football

٢. الاستخدام Usage:

نستخدم الماضي المستمر

١-للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي فى وقت معين

➢Tarek was eating dinner at noon yesterday.
They were studying English at 8 p.m last night

٢للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا عندما قطعه حدث آخر فى الماضي.

➢While/As I was having lunch , the phone rang
➢While (As/ Just as/ when) I was going home, I met one of my best friends.
➢When I returned home, mother was preparing lunch

٣. الكلمات الدالة Key words:

(all + morning, afternoon, evening, night, time), while بينما, as بينما, just as بينما, when عندما,
between 6 and 8 , at ...o'clock yesterday , at...o'clock last, The whole/all day yesterday طول اليوم امس

لاحظ استخدام الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط مع (when/while/As)

While /As/ When	➔ ماضى مستمر	➔ماضى بسيط

e.g -While I was reading my book, the phone rang.
As/When we were walking into the museum , we saw some old statues

ماضى بسيط ➔	While /As/ When	➔ ماضى مستمر

my father arrived while my mother was cooking

➔ ماضى مستمر	When	➔ ماضى بسيط

my mother was cooking when my father arrived

1. You ………look right and left before you cross the road
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) don't have to
2- You .... drink water from the river. It's not clean.

a) doesn't have to b) have to c) has to d) mustn't
3 You..........turn the music up too loud; you will harm our ears.
a) doesn't have to b) have to c) has to d) mustn't
4) You..........do the housework. Our mother is ill.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d)have
s This was a nice evening. We must.........again.
a) meet b) meeting c)met d) to meet
e You..........brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth
a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must
7 You..........forget to do your homework regularly.
a) must to b) must c) mustn't to d) mustn't
0 You..........be kind to your friends.
a) mustn't b)must c) must never d) shouldn't
9 It's late. You........never make so much noise.
a) mustn't b)must c) shouldn't d) don't
10 At school, you.........listen to your teacher.
a) have b) must c) mustn't d) has to
11.a You..........be home on time. Don't be late.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) don't have to
12.This is a valuable book. you.............keep it and mustn't lose it.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) haven't
13- The telephone rang while Tamer.........doing his homework.
a) was b) is c) were d) are
14 Sanaa heard the noise...........she was watching a film.
a) if b) as c) so d) because
15 We were playing tennis when Tamer............his ankle.
a) hurting b) hurt c) was hurting d) is hurting
16. Someone opened the door while I............
a) was sleeping b) was slept c) sleeping d) slept
17.While I was looking out of the window, it.......to rain.
a) started b) was started c) was starting d) starting
18. As I........for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.
a) practise b) practising c) practised d) was practising
19. When I was younger, I.........pizza almost every day.
a) eaten b) eat c) ate d) was eating
20.The boys didn't play because it.......
a) rained b) was raining c) rains d) raining
21.What..........at 10 pm last night?
a) were they doing b) did they do c) did they use to do d) are they doing
22. Yesterday, I ……………………….. a play at 10 o'clock.
a. have watched b. was watching c. was watched d. watched
23. I was studying my lessons when the lights …………………. out.
a. goes b. went c. were going d. gone
24. I …………………..……. my lunch when the phone rang.
a. have eaten b. was eating c. has eaten d. ate
25) Last year, we.......to the beautiful city of Venice in Italy.
a. were travelling b. travel c. travelled d.travels
26.It started to rain while they.......home.
a) walking b) were walking c) walked d) walk
27.My father was watching TV when the phone............
a) ring b)rung c)rang d) was ringing
28. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners ....through the park. WB
a) run b)was running c)ran d) were running
29 As Karim was taking photos of the animals, he ....his phone. WB
a) lost b)was losing c)loses d) losing



30 While Mona........................tennis, she hurt her arm. WB

a. plays   b. played   c. was playing   d. were playing

31. I was doing my homework when my sister........................me. WB

a. was calling   b. calls   c. called   d. calling

32. Lots of birds......................... in the sky as we were sitting down on the beach WB

a. was flying   b. flew   c. fly   d. were flying

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1 You.............. (mustn't)study hard if you want to pass your exams.
2 You mustn't.......... (using) a mobile phone in class.
3 You mustn't............. (to forget) your bag and books.
4 Students and teachers must ....(are) polite to each other.
5.We must........... (to go) to the laboratory for our science lessons
6. People ....(must) throw rubbish in the street.
7 They.......... (have) tea when the doorbell rang.
8 When he ....(arrive), we were having dinner.
9 While I ....(sweep) the floor , I heard a noise.
10.They.............. (forget) their books yesterday.
11.It's a No parking area. you ....(must) park here.
12.I was doing my homework when my sister ....(call) me.
13.At four p.m. yesterday, I............. (do)my homework.
14.I was walking through the park when I............... (meet) Adel.
15.While I was texting my friends, the school bus.............. (arrive).
16..During an exam, you............ (must)copy from the other students.
17. I ....(must) forget my wife's birthday, so I have to buy a card today.
18.When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners ....(run)through the park
19.While Mona......................... (play)tennis, she hurt her arm.

6-Write a paragraph of (90) words on

A historic place in Egypt

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

an ancient egyptian object

....
....
....
....
....
....



....
....
....
....

Unit 5 Helping you, helping me

Apartment = flat	شقة	stranger	غريب	Do random acts of kindness	يقوم اعمال لطف عشوائى
lucky	محظوظ	smile	ابتسامة/يتسم	Kind to	عطوف على
messy	فوضوى	tips	نصائح	Boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
lift	مصعد	thief	لص	Head teacher	مدرسة داخلية
stairs	سلالم	fantastic	رائع	polite	مؤدب
tidy	مرتب/منظم	trainers	حذاء رياضى	generous	كريم
Look after	يعتنى ب	perhaps	ربما	Pick up	يلتقط
Make the bed	يرتب الفراش	princess	اميرة	Cruel to	قاسى على
Put away	يـــضع شـــيئا فـــى مكانه	community	مجتمع/ جماعة	disabled	معاق
Take out	يخرج	beggar	شحات	businesswoman	سيدة اعمال
Wash up	يغسل الاطباق	servant	خادم	donation	تبرع
advertisement	اعلان	behave	يتصرف	Give away	يتبرع
kindness	طيبة/عطف	donation	تبرع	share	يقاسم او يشارك
random	عشوائى	donate	يتبرع	laboratory	معمل
helpful	معاون/مساعد	Difficult for	صعب ل	sailor	بحار
blog	مدونة الكترونية	Surprised about	مندهش بشان	Social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Boody : Hello, Roaa. How are you?
Roaa : Hi, Boody. I'm fine.
Boody : What jobs do you (1)............................to do at home?
Roaa : I have to (2)...........................lunch.
Boody : (3)............................you have to clean the floor?
Roaa : No. My sister cleans it.
Boody : Does your brother have to walk to school?
Roaa : No, he (4)............................He goes by bike.
Boody : What about you?
Roaa : I (5)............................the bus.

2.Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?
Omar : Yes, 1(1).....................
Nasser : Which subject do you (2)...................to study?
Omar : Geography! I have a geography test tomorrow.
Nasser : What (3)............your brother? Does he have to study, too?
Omar : No, he doesn't.
Nasser : What does he have to do then?
Omar : He (4)......................to tidy up his bedroom; it's really messy.
Nasser : It's nearly the end of break. Where do we have (5)............ go for the next lesson?



3.Rahma Good morning, Haneen?
Haneen Good morning, Rahma?
Rahma Where do you (1)...........................?
Haneen I work for a charity which looks (2)....................sick animals.
Rahma Who can help you?
Haneen People donate (3).............to the charity to buy food for the animals.
Rahma What kinds of animals do you help?
Haneen We help animals such as (4)............................and camels.
Rahma I wish you good luck.
Haneen (5).................................you very much.

4.Manal : I m going to travel to London next month.
Hanaa :That's (1).............................news!
Manal : What do you think I should see in London first?
Hanaa : Historic places, I think. You (2)..........................go to the House of Parliament and the National Gallery.
Manal : And what about the British Museum?
Hanaa : Oh, yes. You (3).............................go there certainly.
Manal : I'll go to the museum in the afternoon.
Hanaa : That's not good. You (4)..........................to be there early.
Manal : Why (5)...............................I have to go early?

5.Elham : Manal, what do you think we should do?
Manal : I don't know. (1).....................watch TV.
Elham : That's a (2)..................idea. We're going shopping later, so I think you should rest for a while.
Manal : I don't think I want to go anywhere.
Elham : What do you (3)...........................? I thought you said we were going shopping.
Manal : I know, but I changed my mind. I'm too tired.
Elham : Well, when (4)...........................you think we'll go?
Manal : Maybe tonight.
Elham : OK, (5)..........................I use your phone?

6.Malak . I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.
Rawia . I m (1)...........................sure. Some of them work very hard.
Malak : What do you think they should do?
Rawia . I think it would be (2)........................ they gave some money to a charity.
Malak . I (3).......................that it's important for them to donate money.
Rawia : That's exactly what I think.
Malak . But I also (4)...........................it's important to work for the charity, too.
Rawia : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.
Malak : I see what you (5)...........................Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.
Rawia : Good idea.

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

Mrs Saleh had two children. Samy was seven years old, and his sister Nora was four. Samy went to school, but Nora did not. When Samy was at home, he often played with Nora while their mother was cooking or washing or cleaning. Mrs Saleh was usually free to do her work quietly because Samy was very nice to his small sister.
One Friday morning, the two children were playing in the garden while their





mother was cooking lunch. They were quite happy until Nora suddenly began to cry and ran into the kitchen to her mother. Mrs Saleh stopped cooking and said, "Why are you crying, Nora? Samy broke my toy," Nora answered, crying more loudly." How did he break it?" her mother asked. Nora stopped crying, but did not answer for a few seconds. Then she said, "I hit him on the head with it."

A) Answer the following questions:

1-Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2 Why was Mrs Saleh usually free to do her work quietly?..
3 How old was Samy's sister?...

B) Choose the correct answer:

4The underlined word "loudly" means......
a) calmly b) noisily c) kindly d) quietly
5 When Nora cried, her mother was in the...........
a) garden b) bedroom c) kitchen d) school
6 The toy was..............
a) repaired b) cleaned c) broken d) old

2.Next Wednesday Abeer is going to have her birthday party . She will be twelve years old . She is going to invite Huda and Ranaa and all her other friends . It will be a nice party . Abeer and her mother are working hard. They are making new dresses for the party.
On Monday , they will go to the shops by bus to buy food for the party . They will buy bread, cakes and sweets . Then , Abeer's mother will cook . The girls will be hungry , so there must be a lot of food . Abeer has got a book about games for parties . She is reading the book and she will choose some games . She will choose the best games in the book.

A) Answer these questions :

1. When was Abeer born? ....
2. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?..
3. How will Abeer and her mother will go shopping ?..

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. Abeer and her mother will go shopping…………………… .
a) next Wednesday b) today c) on Monday d) on Sunday
5. Abeer's mother must have a lot of food because ……………….. .
a) the girls will be hungry. b) the girls will make new dresses
c) the family will be hungry d) all Abeer's friends will be happy
6. Abeer is …………………… for the party.
a) cooking food for the party b) reading a book about games
c) buying some dresses d) singing and dancing

3.it was a rainy day in January, the farmers were in their fields. A boy ran towards them shouting for help. He told them that the river was coming up and they were in danger. They didn't believe him because he was just a little boy. An hour later, the high water in the river came over the land. The farmers now knew that the boy's words were true. They tried to save their fields and houses, but they couldn't control the water of the river. They had to run away. They were sad because they lost both their crops and houses.
In the afternoon, some engineers came with a number of machines and dug a canal from the river. Some machines were also used to pump the water out of the fields.

A) Answer the following questions:

1.Why was the boy shouting?..

2. Which season was it?..
3.Why did the engineers come?..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4.The underlined pronoun "They" refers to.........
a) fields b) machines c) engineers d) farmers
5.The farmers were sad because they lost.........
a) their pumps b) their crop c) machines d) their children
6. The farmers didn't believe the boy because he was...................
a) happy b) clever c) liar d) little

4.We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that. **Nearly** five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think it helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many People like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have **it** with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

A) Answer the following questions:

1.Why do people drink tea?..
2. When do people usually drink tea?...
3.What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4.The underlined word "Nearly" means..............
a) opposite b) almost c) nearby d) far
5. People usually drink tea with.........when they are tired.
a) milk b) orange c) lemon d) leaves
6.Tea is grown in.............
a) Japan b) China c) India d) both b and c

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They gave the footballer a …………………… test to check his health. WB
a) leveling b) random c) simple d) difficult
2. We all remember my grandfather's ……., he always helped us when we were children WB
a) cruelty b) advice c) kindness d) ugliness
3. This book is ……………., you should read it. WB
a) boring b) bad c) useless d) fantastic
4.. Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was surprised when a …………. walked into his shop. WB
a) neighbour b) relative c) stranger d) friend
5.I'm very........today because I found a good job and met my old best friend.
a) messy b) lazy c) tidy d) lucky
6.Students....... turns to answer questions.
a) plan b) do c) make d) take
7.My sister likes helping mum to.................... the cooking.
a) do b) make c) have d} pay
8. He lives on the 17thfloor. He always takes the.......................
a) steps b) ladder c) lift d) plane
9. I usually ....my baby sister when my parents are away.
a) look after b) wash up c) tidy up d) look up
10.You should.................... your things after using them.
a) take out b) look after c) put away d) give up



11. My mother always takes out the rubbish when the bin is...
a) full b) empty c) lazy d) tidy
12.I bought a lovely.......for my mother to put her money in.
airing b) scarf c) necklace d) purse
13. you should be kind ………………………………. strangers .
a) at b) to c) for d) with
15.It's friendly to meet people with a..................
a) smile b) sadness c) damage d) cry
16. Our children don't often talk to..........................
a) runners b) waiters c) strangers d) designers
17.To be good at English, you should.........it.
a) recommend b) practise c) tell d) play
18. I recommend you watch that film. It's...............
a) amazed b) ugly c) fantastic d) boring
19.When you are on a bus, you should........your seat to older people.
a) take b) give c) touch d) sell
20. Our apartment is ....the fifth floor.
a) in b)from c) on d) between
21. These are the ......you should follow to be fit.
a) tubes b) tips c) lips d) taps
22. Everyone wants to make the world ……………………….. for them.
a) bad b) worse c) better d) worst
23. People who can't walk, usually have a/an............to help them.
a) armchair b) seat c) sofa d) wheelchair
24.You show............when you do things to help others and show you care about them.
a) kindness b) sadness c) carelessness d) laziness
25. The.........goes to prison for taking things that don't belong to him.
a) police b) thief c) volunteer d) charity
26. Players should wear the best............when they play to help them run.
a) glasses b) trainers c) jeans d) jackets
27. I saw a............man who cannot walk and uses a wheelchair.
a) messy b) generous c) clever d) disabled
28.The rich help poor people a lot when they............money to charities.
9) sell b) borrow c) donate d) lose
29.A.............school is a school where students study and live all the time.
a) boarding b) board c) broad d) abroad
30. Children like to go to the zoo and...........animals there.
a) drive b) play c)feed d) eat
31. A.............is the daughter of the king or queen.
a) prince b) princess c) servant d) ruler
32.Be careful! You're a small boy. You can't........this heavy bag alone.
a) stop b) leave c) lift d) left
33. The.............means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.
a) community b) distance c) country d) village
34. We shouldn't be.............to animals.
a) kind b) polite c) tidy d) cruel
35. Nowadays there are many..............in most streets who ask for money.
a) servants b) beggars c) sellers d) actors
36.My grandfather always gives us money and presents. He is..
a) lucky b) tidy c) clever d) generous
37. A .... is a person who works in houses.
a) servant b) headteacher c) beggar d) princess
38. A kind person is someone who ....well.
a) sleeps b) plays c)behaves d) travels
39. I usually..................... school on time.



a) arrive b) get c) go d) reach

40. The baker looked............................ when Sara gave all cakes to the beggar.

a) surprise b) surprising c) surprised d) surprises

41. .... always ask people for money .

a) Tourists b) Bakers c) Masters d) Beggars

42. My mother is an excellent cook. She cooks......food.

a) generous b) disabled c) delicious d) ugly

43.................... is to give something useful to a person or charity that needs help.

a) borrow b) donate c) lift d) steal

44. My aunt is a............She has a big company.

a) teacher b) baker c) businesswoman d)secretary

45 A..........is the person who fights fires.

a) Pilot b) sailor c) writer d) firefighter

46. You should show your............before leaving a country.

a) report b) blog c) passport d) photo

47.A...........is the person who works at airports.

a) pilot b) sailor c) writer d) firefighter

48. We should put rubbish in..................

a) pots b) bins c) bowls d) bottles

49. A...........is something that women use to put their money in.

a) suitcase b) basket c) purse d) tool

50. A...........is the person who works on a boat.

a) teacher b) sailor c) doctor d) pilot

51. A...........is something that takes you to the top of a building, without using the stairs.

a) roof b) wall c) ladder d) lift

52. Teenagers shouldn't spend too much time on...........media.

a) society b) social c) sociable d) community

53.My little brother likes catching fish. He wants to be a......

a) nurse b) fisherman c) waiter d) firefighter

54. This is the.........that my family donates money to.

a) school b) market c) shop d) charity

55. We've got science in the ....

a) cinema b) restaurant c) cafe d) laboratory

56.This charity has got a lot of..........from rich people.

a) pollution b) equipment c) donation d) development

57. How much time did you spend..................this project?

a) at b) in c) of d) on

58. My mother always.................the toys among my little brothers.

a) puts b) tidies c) washes d)shares

59. My little brother gave...............his toys to a charity.

a) away b) up c) into d) back

Grammar

Necessity and obligation

الضرورة و الالزام

Present Necessity الـضــرورة فى المضارع

تستخدم have/has to للتعبير عن قاعدة او قانون اواشياء مفروضة علينا ولا خيار لنا فيها

I , you , we , they ⟶ have to + inf.
he , she , it ⟶ has to

→We **have to go** to school on time

❖ She **has to get** a passport to travel to London. We **have to go** to school five days a week.

❖ All children in Egypt **have to** go to school from the age of six to fifteen.

lack of Present Necessity نقــص الضـــرورة فى المضارع

❖ تُعبر عن عدم الضرورة لفعل شىء فى المضارع (لا داعى لفعل الشىء ويمكن أن تفعله إذا أردت)

I, you, we, they ⟶ don't have to + inf.
he, she, it ⟶ doesn't have to + inf.

❖ She **doesn't have to** hurry. She isn't late for school.

I **don't have to** do my homework today. We **don't have to** go to school on Saturdays

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الاتى :

Do /Does + فاعل +have to مصدر ?

*⌧Do you **have to** get up at seven o'clock? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*

*➔Does she **have to** eat breakfast? Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.*

عند تكوين السؤال ب اداة استفهام :

كلمة استفهام + Do /Does + فاعل +have to مصدر

➲When do we **have to** finish our homework?

➲ Why does she **have to** go now?

٢- نستخدم should / shouldn't + inf. للنصيحة (advice)

←← نستخدم should بمعنى يجب ان للتحدث عن اشياء من الجيد ان نفعلها.

Ex-You **should** go now The bus goes in ten minutes.

→Tourists **should** wear sun cream when it s very hot .

←← نستخدم shouldn't بمعنى لا يجب ان للتحدث عن اشياء ليس من الجيد ان نفعلها.

✶you **shouldn't** watch too much television.

→You **shouldn't** walk too much in the sun.

السؤال Question:

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الاتى :

Should + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?

➔should I go now? √- Yes, you should √- No, you shouldn't

عند تكوين السؤال ب اداة استفهام :

كلمة استفهام+should + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?

√-when **should** we **go** to the beach? -- what **should** I **do**?

Defining relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل المحددة



Who – Which – That – Where

(who – that) الذى – التى : تستخدم مع العاقل

→Miss Amal is the teacher who/that teaches us science.
→ The stadium has 75,000 seats for people who/that want to watch sports.

لاحظ -عند استخدام comma قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل لا نستخدم that فى هذا النوع.

→My mother, who is standing beside me, is very kind.
→Mr Zaki, who lives next door, is a scientist.

(which – that) الذى – التى : تستخدم مع غير العاقل(أشياء وحيوانات)

→That's the horse which/that won the competition.
☎What's the name of the book which you are reading?
✂Elephants, which live for around 45 years, are found in Africa.

(where) حيث : تستخدم مع المكان (وهى تعبر عن مكان او ما بداخله)

This is the house where Grandfather lived.
► This is the village where my father was born.
►There is also a stadium Where you can watch horse riding .

١-لاحظ اذا وجد حرف مع المكان فاننا نستخدم which وليس where

→→That is the flat which we live in
→the house which they live in is very old.

٢-لاحظ : نستخدم (which) مع المكان إذا جاء بعدها فعل وليس فاعل (او كانت جملة لتعريف المكان او اعطاء معلومة عنه.

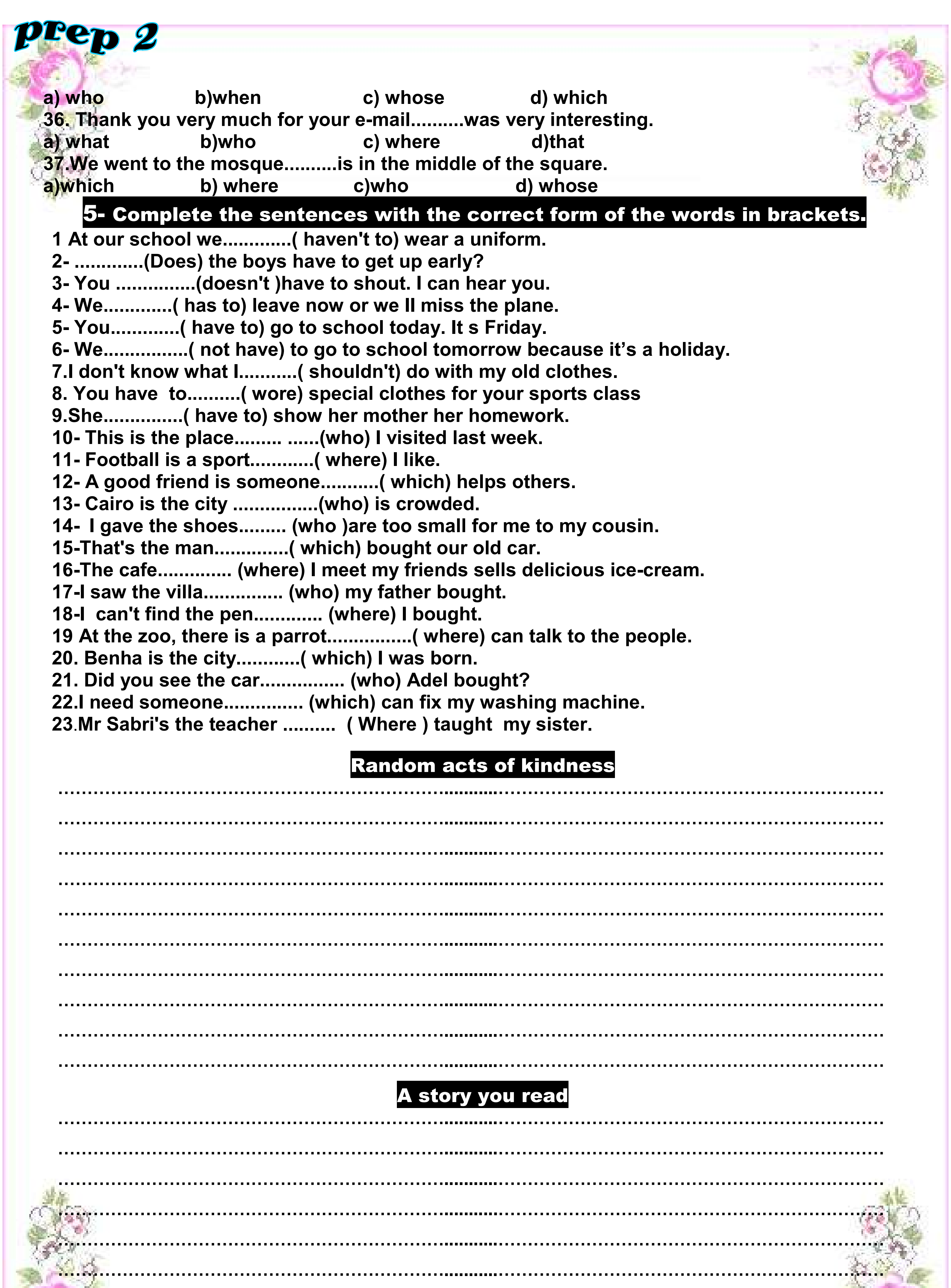
📖This is the school which was built last year.
❄Cairo International Stadium is in Nasr City, which is in the northeast of Cairo
→this is the house which my father bought last year

ملاحظات هامة للتشوز او صحح الخطا		
١.	للعاقل	نختار who أو that
٢.	لغير العاقل	نختار which أو that
٣.	لمكان	يحدث شىء بداخله نختار where ويتبعها فاعل وفعل مع عدم وجود حرف الجر قبلهُ أو فى نهاية الجملة ، وفى حالة وجود حرف الجر نختار which
٤.	لمكان	لم يُذكر حدث يتم داخلهُ نختار which ويتبعها فاعل وفعل.
٥.	لمكان	جاء بعده فعل مباشرة بدون فاعل نختار which

1. My father .... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work . SB
a) has to b) have to c) doesn't have to d) don't have to
2. When you get on the bus, you .... buy a ticket. SB
a) have to b) has to c) don't have to d) doesn't have to
3. At the weekends, I .... get up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. SB
a) have to b) hast to c) don't have to d) doesn't have to
4. Everyone ....do a random act of kindness sometimes. WB
a) should b) shouldn't c) have to d) has to
5. You .... pass your exams to go to university. WB
a) should b) don't have to c) have to d) doesn't have to
6. You .... do your homework at the same time everyday. WB
a) shouldn't b) don't have to c) have to d) has to
7. You .... show your passport when you leave the country . WB
a) have to b) has to c) shouldn't d) needn't



8- We............cook more; there's enough food.
a) have to b) don't have to c) has to d) should
9- I don t like that uniform, but I......wear it at work.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) have to d) don't have to
10 It's cold. You.........wear your jacket.
a} shouldn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't
11- She's always tired. She........go to bed late every night.
a) shouldn't b) should c) have to d) don't have to
12 You............remember to close the windows when you leave the house.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) has to
13.You...........eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.
a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) shouldn't
14. I..........wear glasses because I can't see very well.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) shouldn't
15.-Hany ……………………… go to school on time.
a don't have to b have to c has to d doesn't have
16.- It is cloudy today, so we…………………..take our sunglasses.
a don't have to b not have to c don't have d have not to
17-good students………………to take private lessons.
a-won't b-haven't c-shouldn't d-don't have
18- …………Sara have to get up early?
a-Are b-Is c- Do d-Does
19- What game do you have………………..?
a-practise b-practising c- to practise d-practise
20.You.........play football here. It's dangerous.
a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must
21- We bought a flat........... is near the school.
a- who b- which c- where d- what
22- What's the name of the book...........you are reading?
a- who b- which c- where d- what
23- The people........... live next door are very friendly.
a- who b- which c- where d- whom
24- This is the village...........my father was born.
a- who b- which c- where d- what
25- Please show me the photos..........you took on Sports Day.
a- who b- which c- where d- what
26-Tennis is a game........... many people enjoy.
a- who b- which c- where d- what
27- That's the sports club ....my brother plays basketball.
a- who b- which c- where d- that
28- That is the shop ....Magda bought her jumper.
a- who b- which c- that d- where
29-Alexandria is the city................we like most.
a- who b- which c- when d- where
30-Mr Ali,........................is a teacher, is very kind and helpful.
a- who b- which c- where d- that
31- Arabic is a language................... is spoken in many countries.
a- who b- which c- where d- what
32- this is the house……………….my father bought last year.
a- who b- which c- where d- what
33. This is the place………………… my professor had the accident.
a. where b. when c. who d. which
34. We arrived at a nice beach,........we could swim and sit in the sun.
a) who b) which c)what d) where
35 A waiter is a man.........serves drinks and food in a restaurant.



a) who b)when c) whose d) which

36. Thank you very much for your e-mail..........was very interesting.

a) what b)who c) where d)that

37.We went to the mosque..........is in the middle of the square.

a)which b) where c)who d) whose

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

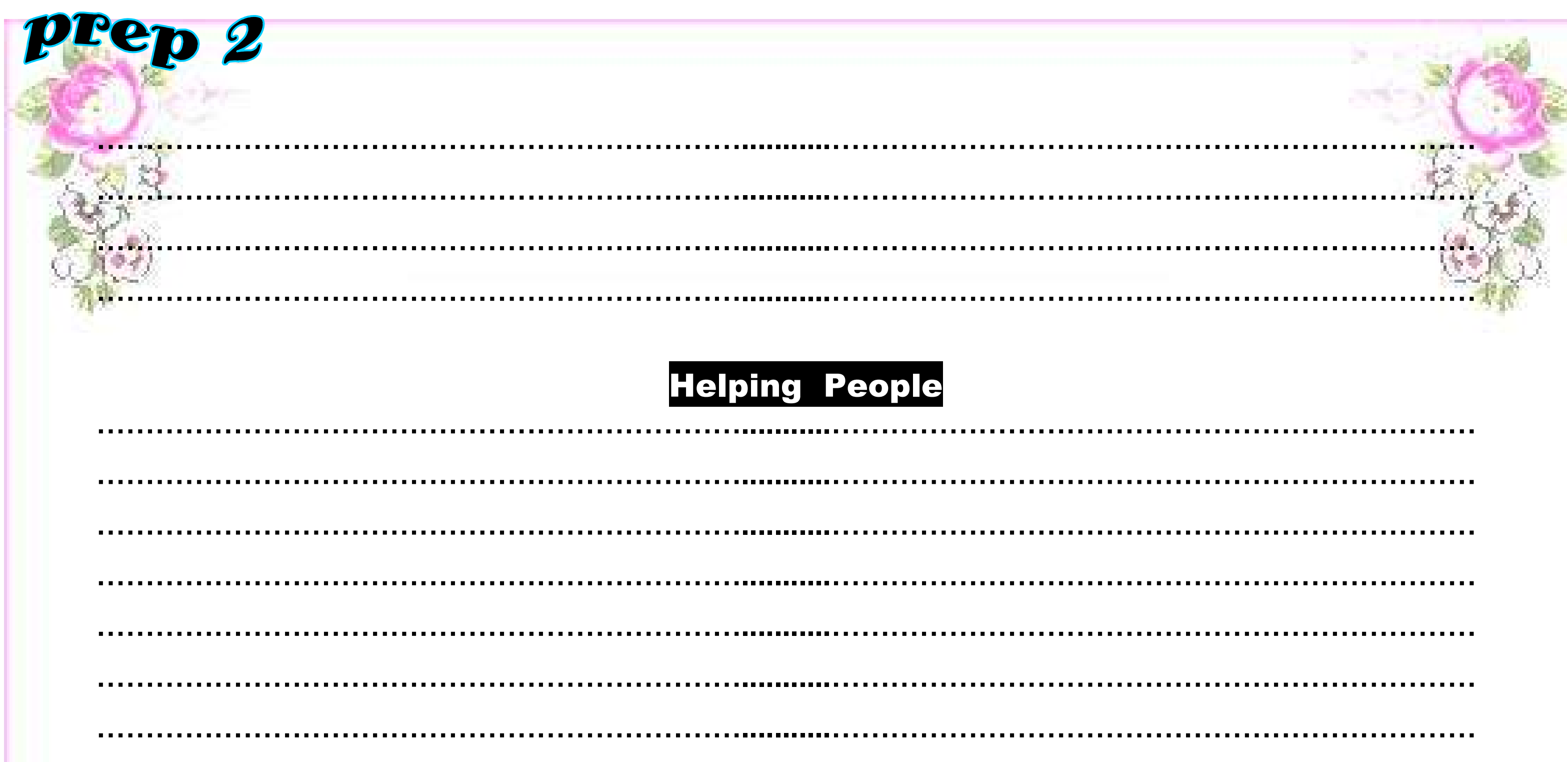
1 At our school we.............(haven't to) wear a uniform.
2- ....(Does) the boys have to get up early?
3- You ....(doesn't)have to shout. I can hear you.
4- We.............(has to) leave now or we ll miss the plane.
5- You.............(have to) go to school today. It s Friday.
6- We................(not have) to go to school tomorrow because it's a holiday.
7.I don't know what I...........(shouldn't) do with my old clothes.
8. You have to..........(wore) special clothes for your sports class
9.She...............(have to) show her mother her homework.
10- This is the place......... ......(who) I visited last week.
11- Football is a sport............(where) I like.
12- A good friend is someone...........(which) helps others.
13- Cairo is the city ....(who) is crowded.
14- I gave the shoes......... (who)are too small for me to my cousin.
15-That's the man..............(which) bought our old car.
16-The cafe.............. (where) I meet my friends sells delicious ice-cream.
17-I saw the villa............... (who) my father bought.
18-I can't find the pen............. (where) I bought.
19 At the zoo, there is a parrot................(where) can talk to the people.
20. Benha is the city............(which) I was born.
21. Did you see the car................ (who) Adel bought?
22.I need someone............... (which) can fix my washing machine.
23.Mr Sabri's the teacher .... (Where) taught my sister.

Random acts of kindness

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

A story you read

....
....
....
....
....
....



Helping People

Unit 6 Different environments

Air pollution	تلوث الهواء	seat	مقعد	Line graph	رسم بيانى خطى
canal	قناة	Warn (ed)	يحذر	Melt (ed)	ينصهر/يذوب
drought	جفاف	Water pollution	تلوث الماء	presentation	عرض تقديمى
electric	كهربى	Bar chart	رسم بيانى شريطى	recycling	اعادة التدوير
environment	البيئة	cause	يسبب	serious	جاد/خطير
flood	فيضان	Changing world	العالم المتغير	temperature	درجة الحرارة
mountain	جبل	Climate change	التغير المناخى	axis	محور
report	تقرير	electricity	الكهرباء	weather	الطقس
rubbish	قمامة	Green energy	الطاقة النظيفة		
Black honey	عسل اسود	Pray (ed)	يصلى	Protect (ed)	يحمى
canal	قناة مائية	title	عنوان (كتاب)	Respect (ed)	يحترم
cotton	قطن	east	شرق	Scuba diving	رياضة الغطس
delicious	لذيذ	north	شمال	wildlife	الحياة البرية
Introduce (d)	يقدم	south	جنوب	The Red sea coast	ساحل البحر الاحمر
Locate (d)	يقع	west	غرب	sweets	حلوى
monuments	آثار	Damage (d)	يتلف/يدمر	Produce (d)	ينتج
mosque	مسجد	podcast	بث اذاعى	position	مكانة/موقع
diagram	رسم بيانى	Aim to	يهدف الى	including	متضمنا/مشتملا على
Burn(burnt)	يحرق	City centre	وسط المدينة	remind	يذكر
Reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	Collect	يجمع	riverbank	ضفة النهر
solution	حل	event	حدث	tonnes	اطنان
Solve (d)	يحل	global	عالمى	gas	غاز
Vote (d)	يصوت	importance	اهمية	Lead to	يؤدى الى
coloured	ملون	volunteer	متطوع	idea	فكرة





2- Complete the following dialogue:

1.Ali : Hello, Eman. How are you?
Eman : Fine.
Ali : Which is (1).................. the laptop or the computer?
Eman : The (2).................is bigger.
Ali : Is the screen on the computer the same as the one on the laptop?
Eman : No, the screen of the computer is not (3).............small as the laptop.
Ali : What (4)...................the price?
Eman : The price is the same. The laptop is similar to the computer in price.
Ali : Which is heavier?
Eman : (5)...................

2.Adel : Where do you live?
Ibrahim : I (1)......... in Tanta.
Adel : Where is Tanta located?
Ibrahim : It's (2)...................in the north of Egypt.
Adel : What is it known for?
Ibrahim : It's known for its (3).......................sweets.
Adel : How can I go there?
Ibrahim : You can go there by bus or by (4)................
Adel :Tanta is a very beautiful city.
Ibrahim : (5)...................., it is.

3.Hala : Where did you go on holiday last year?
Nora : I went to Alexandria.
Hala :Where did you (1).................?
Nora : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Hala : (2)..................did you travel there?
Nora : I travelled (3)...............train.
Hala : Did you (4)..................in the sea?
Nora :Yes, I did.
Hala : What did you eat there?
Nora : I usually (5)................fish when I was there.

4.Aya :The problem is that we all use too much water.
Reem : I (1)......................We should do something about that.
Aya : Certainly. We could use less water.
Reem : That's (2).....................So, how can we use less water?
Aya : Well, (3)......................don't we try recycling water?
Reem : Sorry, I don't know what you mean.
Aya : We could use water twice.
Reem : (4)......................could we do that?
Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Reem :That's an interesting (5)......................!The plants would like that.

5.Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.



Leila : What's the problem with that?
Dina :The(1)........................is that we use too many of them.
Leila : What can we do with that problem?
Dina: We (2).......................stop people using them.
Leila: How can we stop people using them?
Dina: Why (3).......................we ask people to use them again?
Leila: (4).......................could we do that?
Dina: People could take the bottles home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.
Leila: (5).......................an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

6.Wafaa : I like your new shoes. What are they made of?
Tasnem -.They are made of (1)........................
Wafaa : When did you (2).........................them?
Tasnem: I bought them last week.
Wafaa : Who bought them for you?
Tasnem: My (3)..........................
Wafaa : (4).........................?
Tasnem: It was my birthday.
Wafaa : Great. Can you come with me to buy a pair for me?
Tasnem: (5)..........................

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

1.A nature reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. Nature reserves may be built by the government in some countries, or by private landowners.
There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which cover 12% of Egyptian land. Those nature reserves were built to protect the Egyptian nature. Egypt announced a plan to build 40 nature reserves from 1997 to 2017, to help protect the natural resources and the culture and history of those areas. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometres) in the southeast, on the Red Sea coast.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?..
2. What is a nature reserve?..
3. Why do you think Egypt planned to build more nature reserves?...........

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Who can build nature reserves around the world?
a) Governments b) Private landowners c) Universities d) Both a and b.
5. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is.......
a) on the Nile b) on the Red Sea coast
c} on the Mediterranean coast d) on the ocean
6. Nature reserves cover about.........of Egyptian land.
a) 10% b)20% c)25% d) 12%

2.I like to collect fossils. It's an interesting hobby, although it is not always easy to find them. The first thing you have to do is to find the right place. I know a place in the desert where there are many fossils. When I see a fossil, first I look carefully to see if it was a plant or a small animal. After that, I put the fossil in a small bag. Then, I take it home. The next step, is deciding where to put the fossil. I group the fossils of animals and plants and keep them in different boxes. **Finally**, I find out the name of the animal or plant and write it in my

notebook.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the writer could keep his fossils at home ?..
2. What does the writer do in his notebook ?...
3. What's the best title of this passage ?...

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a ......
a fossil b box c. notebook d. bag
5. There are many fossils in the...................... .
a desert b field c.farm d.school
6. The underlined word 'finally" means..................
a at last b. first c. usually d.sometimes

3.Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room and their parents were at work. Soha was doing her homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. **It** was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom. They found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dinning room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. Ahmed decided to phone his mother and father and tell them about the water.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Salma playing with her toys?...
2.How did Ahmed and Soha dry the floor?..
3 .How many persons are there in the family?...

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the.........
a) floor b) vapour c) dinning room d) water
5. While Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room, their parents were at............
a) school b) home c) work d) bedroom
6. There was a lot of water on the.........floor.
a) bedroom b) dining room c) hall d) kitchen

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. Please take your .... home; do not leave it in the park. WB
a) rubbish b) grass c) jewellery d) music
2. It was raining for days and then there was a..........., so people used boats to leave their houses! WB
a) flood b) storm c) drought d) storm
3 .There are a lot of cars in the city so the air.........is very bad. WB
a) polluting b) pollute c) polluted d) pollution
4 .There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a.................. WB
a) flood b) storm c) drought d) storm
5. Not many fish live in the river because it is very......... WB
a) polluting b) pollute c) polluted d) pollution
6. Bikes are a/ an ....form of transport because they use no fuel. WB
a) fuel b) green c) oil d) petrol
7. Drier weather is..........the ice on the top of the mountains.
a) sinking b) trying c) leaving d) melting
8 The..........is getting higher because the climate is changing.
a) environment b) mark c) temperature d) mountain
9 Climate change can cause ice on tops of mountains to.........
a) dry b) melt c) snow d) rain
10 Many countries try.........things to help the environment.
a) recycling b) cycling c) damaging d) throwing

11........energy doesn't damage the environment. It's good for it.
a) Fuel b) Green c) Oil d) Petrol
12.Don't leave your........here. You should take it to the nearest bin.
a) rubbish b) children c) tools d) experiments
13 People think that beaches are.......because people go there and forget their worries.
a) relax b) relaxed c) relaxing d) relaxation
14. The...........in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
a) climate b) weather c) whether d) air
15. It s raining heavily this week. I think there will be a serious.
a) drought b) fire c) flood d)sinking
16..............cars are better than usual cars. They don't pollute the environment.
a) Electricity b) Electrical c) Electric d) Electrician
17. Every activity people do can damage or help the.................we live in.
a) environment b) experiment c) laboratory d) equipment
18. Some countries have serious........because there isn't any rain for a long time.
a) emergency b) accidents c) floods d) droughts
19. Egypt has a warm.......................all over the year.
a) climate b) weather c) air d) wind
20. This week, the.........is going to be very hot.
a) storm b) weather c) breeze d) climate
21. More............mean worse fires than ever before.
a) floods b) floats c) droughts d) draughts
22. water...........became much more worse than the last ten years.
a) pollution b) population c) station d) decision
23.Polluted food.................you to become ill or sick.
a) makes b) spends c) feels d)causes
24. Droughts are as ....as floods.
a) safe b) amazing c) serious d) relaxing
25. My home town is.........on the coast. It's in the south-east.
a) closed b) positioned c) located d) lied
26. Mohamed Salah, the famous sports person, is.......for his kindness.
a) opened b) known c) closed d) spent
27. My computer is.........to the internet, so I search easily for anything I want.
a) contacted b) communicated c) tied d) connected
28. Many people like to visit Port Said to.............fish.
a) feed b) spend c) catch d) hold
29. I visited Al-Ahmadi Mosque inTanta and......in it.
a) dived b) fished c) prayed d) played
30. Egypt has wonderful ancient.......which tourists like to visit.
a) monuments b) experiments c) developments d) movements
31. Most fruit and vegetables are.................in the local area.
a) fed b) grown c) lived d)located
32. Minya has delicious black......................made from sugar.
a) honey b) rose c) flower d) cotton
33. Bread is made from.....................
a) cotton b) potatoes e) sugar d) wheat
34. A.................. is a long area of water made for ships or boats. WB
a) coast b) park c canal d) beach
35. ....is a plant used for making clothes. WB
a) Cotton b) Sugar c) Wheat d) Flower
36.MrTaha is famous for his........stories. We all laugh a lot when we hear them
a) boring b) ugly c) expensive d) funny
37.........should look after the environment when they visit a country.
a) Tourism b) Tourists c) Guides d) Owners
38 Farmers plant a lot of orange trees.....................the river.

a) a long b) along c) long d) longer
39. Owners of hotels should...........the environment.
a) protect b) attack c) take d) damage
40. The hotel is located..........a lovely beach.
a) on b) out c) of d) in
41.The few turtles on the beach are in danger. As a.......... the hotel is helping them.
a) cause b) result c) reason d) mark
42. Workers on the boats..........that coral reefs are damaged by scuba divers.
a) believe b) respect c) protect d) collect
43. We should stop tourists..........damaging the environment.
a) to b) from c) at d) by
44. Tourists,.........around the world, visit the Red Sea every year.
a) to b)from c) at d) by
45. My father always asks us to....suggestions about how to spend the weekend.
a) make b) buy c) take d) borrow
46. Adults are the people who are able to......and choose the person they want.
a)vote b) sound c) avoid d) voice
47. My mother always tells me how to.........my problems alone.
a) attack b) kill c) solve d) collect
48.My class decided that we could........bottles to recycle them.
a) drop b) throw c) attract d) collect
49..........is the way we reuse old things to become new again.
a) Cycling b) Recycling c)Throwing d) Dropping
50. Climate change is a.........problem that we should care about.
a) community b) national c) local d) global
51. People in my local area decided to clean up the...to reduce water pollution.
a) garden b) Park c) riverbank d) street
52. My mother always advises me to be careful.........my money.
a) at b)with c) under d) to
53. Rubbish in the river........the wildlife.
a) stores b) damages c) protects d) produces
54. When there is too much smoke coming out from factories, it........... air pollution.
a) causes b) stops c) protects d) saves
55. The price of the room in this hotel is 500 pounds a night.................breakfast.
a) introducing b) paying c) including d) producing
56. Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city...................
a) corner b) centre c) border d) wall
57 My mother often..........me to get my school bag ready before I sleep.
a) reminds b) remembers c) writes d) shows

grammar

Comaparative and superlative adjectives

١ـ الصفة هى كلمة تصف اسماً ، ولها نفس الشكل (التكوين) فى المفرد والجمع ، والصفات يمكن أن تسبق الاسم اوتاتى بعدة ويكون قبلها (v to be):

→ The new dress. ⟶ The dress is new .
→ Strong boys. ⟶ They are strong.
→Ahmed is a careful driver. →The weather is hot

٢ـ لا تتغير الصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفردا او جمعا/مذكرا/ مؤنثا

→Huda is tall. → Amira and Doha are tall.
→ Samy is short →Nady and Hany are short

٣ـ تأتى الصفة بعد هذه الأفعال بمعنى يصبح (be – get – become – go – grow – turn)

The food went bad. He grows angry. The sea turned rough.

٤ - إذا جاءت هذه الافعال بمعنى يبدو يأتى بعدها صفة (look – seem – appear – sound)

He looks happy Your job sounds really interesting. You seem very quiet today

وتنقسم الصفة الى

Short adjectives (one syllable) صفات قصيرة

١ـ عند المقارنة بين اثنين للصفات القصيرة التى تتكون من مقطع واحد نستخدم :

صفة + er + than

٢ـ عند المقارنة بين اكثر من اثنين للصفات القصيرة نستخدم :

the + صفة + est

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
صفة	صفة+ er than	The+ صفة +est
Tall	Taller than	The tallest
fast	Faster than	The fastest
old	older than	the oldest
high	higher than	The highest
safe	safer than	the safest
cheap	cheaper than	The cheapest
quiet	quieter than	the quietest

Ex- early mobiles are heavier than today's phones.
➔ the plane is faster than the train.
←➔today's phones are the easiest to carry around

Longer adjectives (with two or more syllables)صفات طويلة

١ـ عند المقارنة بين اثنين للصفات الطويلة التى تتكون من اكثر من مقطع نستخدم :

more/less + صفة + than

٢ـ عند المقارنة بين اكثر من اثنين للصفات الطويلة نستخدم :

the most/least + صفة

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
صفة	*More + صفة + than* *less + صفة + than*	*The + most + صفة* *The + least + صفة*
popular	More popular than	The most popular
expensive	More expensive than	The most expensive
dangerous	More dangerous than	The most dangerous



difficult	More difficult than	The most difficult
beautiful	More beautiful than	The most beautiful

Ex- This computer is less/more expensive than that one.
→→A train is more comfortable than a bus..
→→For some people, speaking on a mobile phone is the least important of its uses!
The lion is the most dangerous animal in the forest .
➔This is the most expensive dress in the shop .



لاتستخدم the قبل صيغة التفضيل بعد 's الملكية او صفات الملكية

Ahmed shawky was one of Egypt's most famous poets

Irregular adjectives تحفظ صفات شاذة

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
good	*better than*	*the best*
bad	*worse than*	*the worst*
little	*less than*	*the least*
many / much	*more than*	*the most*
Far (مسافة)بعيد	*further than*	*the furthest*

♦في حالة التساوي في الصفة نستخدم:

as + صفة. + as

♦Samy is as tall as Ali

♦في حالة النفي نستخدم:

not as / so + صفة. + as

➢ Heba isn't as/so old as Aya.

Present simple passive المضارع البسيط فى المجهول

المبنى للمجهول هو الجملة التى نبدا فيها بالمفعول فربما لا نعرف من الفاعل او لانريد ذكره او معروف جدا

❈The farmer grows vegetables and fruits.(مبني للمعلوم)
✸vegetables and fruits are grown by the farmer.(مبني للمجهول)

١- التكوين Form:

مفعول + am / is / are + P.P +by + noun

Ex- spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world.
⇨oranges are grown in hot countries.

في حالة النفى

مفعول به+ isn't /aren't + pp

Comic film isn't watched by Amira



٢. السؤال Question:

Prep 2



عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الاتى :

Am/is /are + مفعول + p.p ?

Ex- Is snow formed in the sky ?
→Is evaporation caused by the sun? Yes, it is
Ex- Are special foods eaten at the festival ? yes, they are





اداة استفهام + Am/is /are + مفعول + p.p ?

Ex- How is rain made?
★ ⏩What are doors made of ? ⏩Doors are made of wood
❈ **Where is rice grown? It's grown in India.**

1.Alexandria .... in the north of Egypt. SB
a) located b) is locating c) is located d) locates
2.The farmers around here ....many vegetables. SB
a) growing b) are grown c) grow d) is growing
3. The museum ....by lots of people every year. SB
a) is visiting b) are visited c) visits d) is visited
4. The city is .... for its beautiful buildings. SB
a) is known b) knows c) is knowing d) knew
5.Lots of cotton .... in the area. SB
a) are grown b) is grown c) grew d) grows
6.Many fish .... in the sea near Port Said. SB
a) caught b) is caught c) are caught d) catch
7. Recycling is ....as using less electricity for the environment. SB
a) more important b) most important c) so important d) as beautiful
8.Mount Kenya is not as nigh ....Mount Kilimanjaro. SB
a) as b) than c) to d) so
9.This book is bad, but the other book is .... SB
a) worse b) worst c) more worse d) badly
10.This month was ....than last month because we had some big storms. SB
a) wet b) more wetter c) the wettest d) wetter
11. Lying on a beach is ....than working in the city. SB
a- relaxing b- most relaxing c- more relaxing d- as relaxing
12. Plastic pollution is ....now than it was before .SB
a) bad b) worse c) worst d) the worst
13. There is a lot of traffic in Cairo; it is ....than Marsa Alam. SB
a- noisier b- more noisier c- nosiest d- noise
14.Ali says that football is not .... as handball. SB
a-so difficult b.the most difficult c. more difficult d. less difficult
15.Figs are .... as chocolate. SB
a-so delicious b. most delicious c. more delicious d. as delicious
16. Our house is..........comfortable than this hotel.
a) more b) most c) much d) little
17. Sarah is........................... than her sister.
a) more young b) young c) younger d) youngest
18 .Cars are..........than motorbikes.
a) safe b) safer c) more safer d) safest
19.Sharks are.........................than lions.
a) dangerous b) more dangerous c) much dangerous d) most dangerous
20- Hassan is a ....football player than anyone else in the team.

a) good b) best c) better d) the best

21- We can run as.......... as they can.

a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) the fastest

22- I do not earn as...........money as you do.

a) much b) more c) less d)many

23.-Mount Everest is ………………than Mount Kilimanjaro

a-higher b-high c- highest d-highly

24. The museum is usually…………..on a Saturday than a Sunday.

a- crowded b- most crowded c- more crowded d- as crowed

25- I think the blue dress is………………than the red dress.

a- nicer b- nicest c- nicely d- nice

26. Adel is tall, but Rami is................................

a- more taller b- tallest c- tall d- taller

27.-- which bridge is……………, the 6th October bridge or the Qasr El Nil bridge?

a- long b- longer c- longest d- longer than

28- English is...........than many other languages.

a) easier b) more easy c) easiest d) the easiest

29- We can run as.......... as they can.

a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) the fastest

30- Football is...........popular game in Egypt.

a) most b) the most c) less d)more

31- Which sport is…………., football or tennis?

a) good b) better c) better than d) the best

32...............the thief caught by the police officer?

a) Is b) Has c) Does d) Will

33. In summer, more ice cream........................than in winter.

a) ate b) eats c) is eating d) is eaten

34. The flowers are watered.................. my brother every morning.

a) of b) at c) with d) by

35.This writer's articles......................by many people.

a) read b) are read c)are reading d) reading

36. German............................as a second language in our school.

a) is speaking b) speaking c) speaks d) is spoken

37. Petrol......................... from oil.

a) making b) made c) is made d) makes

38. The walls aren't.......................by my mother.

a) painted b) painting c) paint d) paints

39. My room.............................every day.

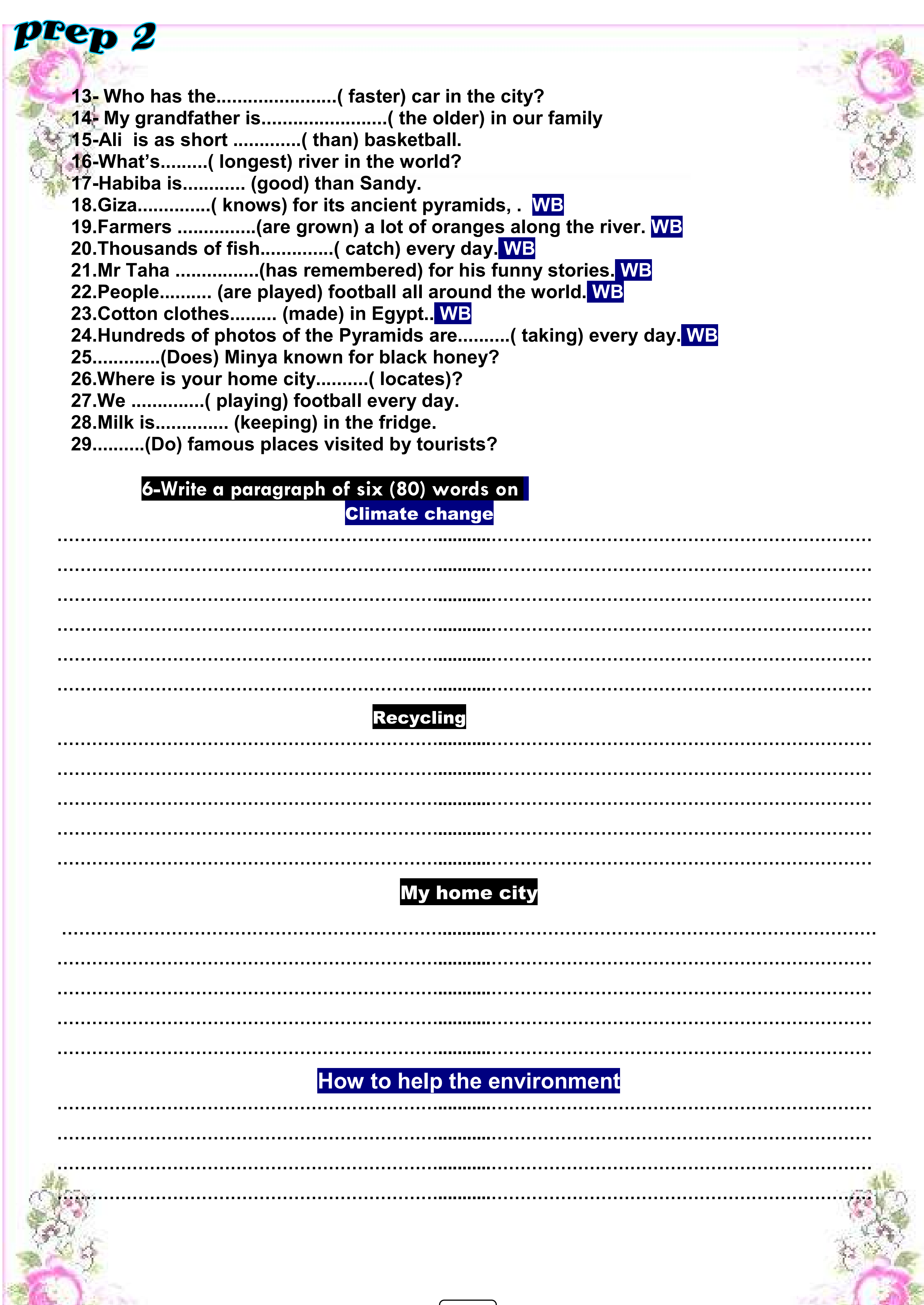
a) was cleaned b) is cleaning c) is cleaned d) cleans

40.The new museum is ....from Cairo than the old museum.

a) far b) the furthest c) furthest d) further

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1-No one in class is ....(tallest) than Reem.
2-Cairo is............(most) crowded than Giza.
3- An elephant is ....(big) than a camel.
4- Today it's not ....(windy as) yesterday
5- That mountain was ....(high) than we thought.
6- Cheese is..............(bad) for you than fruit.
7- This tablet is.............(expensive) than that one.
8--Cairo is the..............(big)city in Africa.
9-Tennis is...............(least)dangerous than football.
10-He was the.............(better) player in the team.
11-The hotel by the park is the......................(modern) hotel in the city
12-The market is...............(far) from my house than the school



13- Who has the.......................(faster) car in the city?
14- My grandfather is........................(the older) in our family
15-Ali is as short ....(than) basketball.
16-What's.........(longest) river in the world?
17-Habiba is............ (good) than Sandy.
18.Giza..............(knows) for its ancient pyramids, . WB
19.Farmers ....(are grown) a lot of oranges along the river. WB
20.Thousands of fish..............(catch) every day. WB
21.Mr Taha ....(has remembered) for his funny stories. WB
22.People.......... (are played) football all around the world. WB
23.Cotton clothes......... (made) in Egypt.. WB
24.Hundreds of photos of the Pyramids are..........(taking) every day. WB
25.............(Does) Minya known for black honey?
26.Where is your home city..........(locates)?
27.We ....(playing) football every day.
28.Milk is.............. (keeping) in the fridge.
29..........(Do) famous places visited by tourists?

6-Write a paragraph of six (80) words on

Climate change

....
....
....
....
....
....

Recycling

....
....
....
....
....

My home city

....
....
....
....
....

How to help the environment

....
....
....
....